

## **Chapter 1**

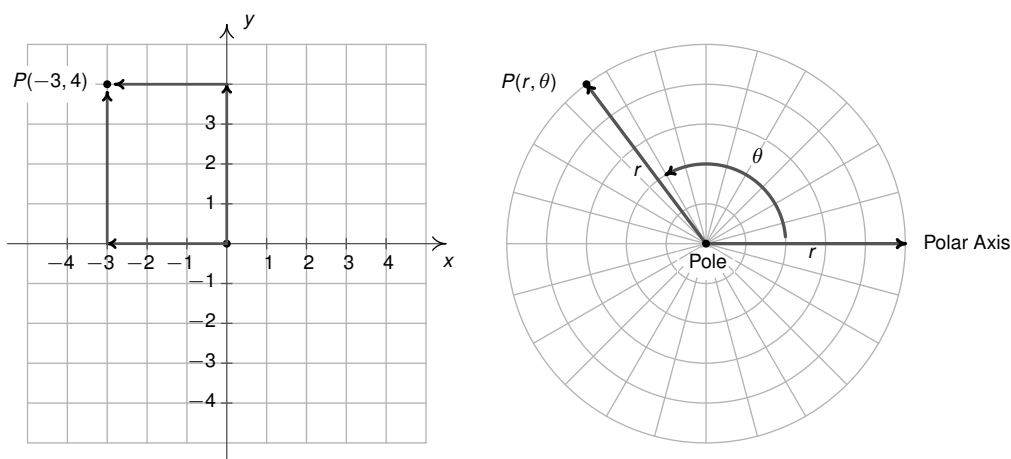
# POLAR COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

## 1.1 Polar Coordinates

In Section ??, we introduced the notion of assigning ordered pairs of real numbers called ‘coordinates’ to points in the plane. Recall the Cartesian coordinate plane is defined using two number lines – one horizontal and one vertical – which intersect at right angles at a point called the ‘origin’.

As seen below on the left, to plot a point with Cartesian coordinates, say  $P(-3, 4)$ , we start at the origin, travel horizontally to the left 3 units, then up 4 units. Alternatively, we could start at the origin, travel up 4 units, then to the left 3 units and arrive at the same location.

For the most part, the ‘motions’ of the Cartesian system (over and up) describe a rectangle, and most points can be thought of as the corner diagonally across the rectangle from the origin.<sup>1</sup> For this reason, the Cartesian coordinates of a point are often called ‘rectangular’ coordinates.

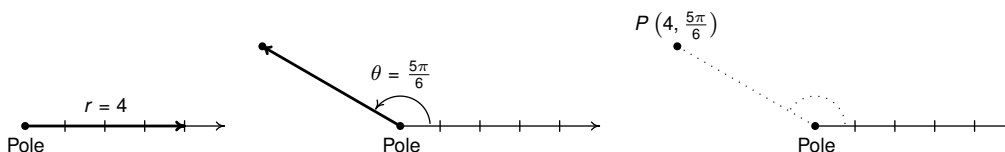


In this section, we introduce a new system for assigning coordinates to points in the plane – **polar coordinates** as diagrammed above on the right. We start with an origin point, called the **pole**, and a ray called the **polar axis**.

We locate a point  $P$  using two coordinates,  $(r, \theta)$ , where  $r$  represents a *directed* distance from the pole<sup>2</sup> and  $\theta$  is a measure of counter-clockwise rotation from the polar axis.

Roughly speaking, the polar coordinates  $(r, \theta)$  of a point measure ‘how far out’ the point is from the pole (that’s  $r$ ), and ‘how far to rotate’ from the polar axis, (that’s  $\theta$ ).

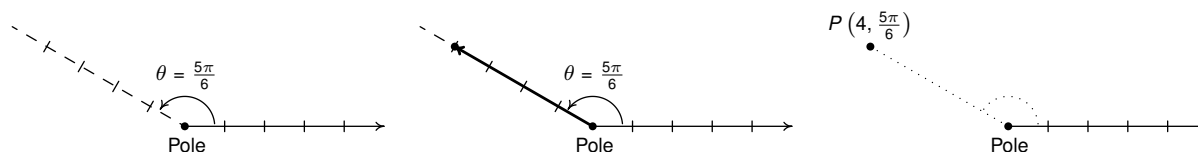
For example, if we wished to plot the point  $P$  with polar coordinates  $(4, \frac{5\pi}{6})$ , we’d start at the pole, move out along the polar axis 4 units, then rotate  $\frac{5\pi}{6}$  radians counter-clockwise.



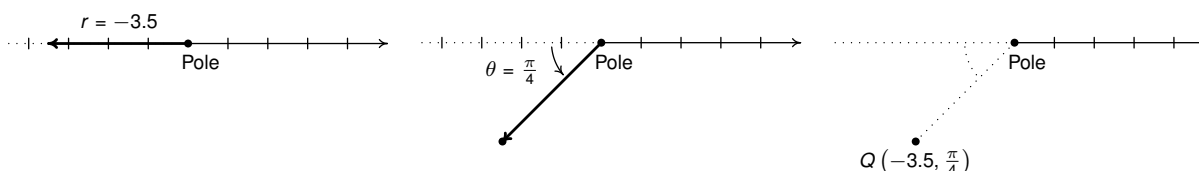
<sup>1</sup>Excluding, of course, the points in which one or both coordinates are 0.

<sup>2</sup>We will explain more about this momentarily.

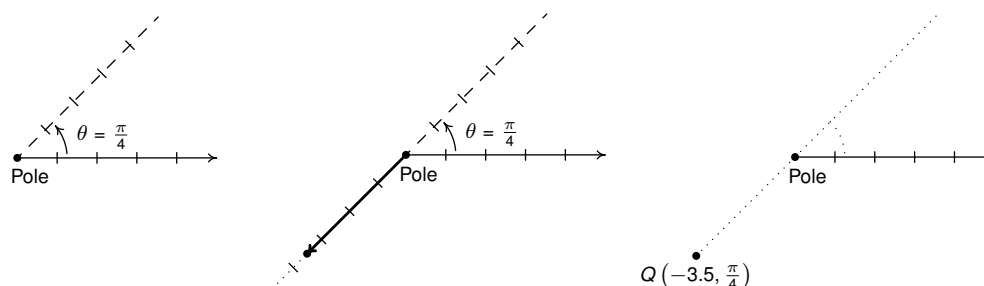
We may also visualize this process by thinking of the rotation first.<sup>3</sup> To plot  $P(4, \frac{5\pi}{6})$  this way, we rotate  $\frac{5\pi}{6}$  counter-clockwise from the polar axis, then move outwards from the pole 4 units. Essentially we are locating a point on the terminal side of  $\frac{5\pi}{6}$  which is 4 units away from the pole.



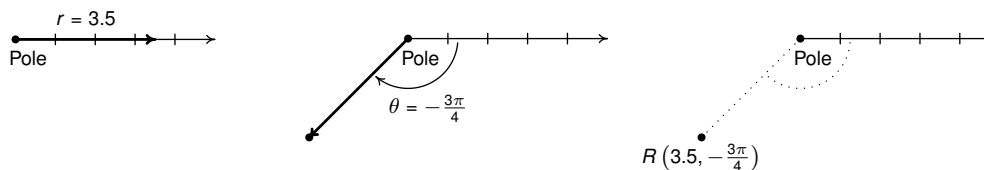
If  $r < 0$ , we begin by moving in the opposite direction on the polar axis from the pole. For example, to plot the point with polar coordinates  $Q(-3.5, \frac{\pi}{4})$  we have



If we interpret the angle first, we rotate  $\frac{\pi}{4}$  radians, then move back through the pole 3.5 units. Here we are locating a point 3.5 units away from the pole on the terminal side of  $\frac{5\pi}{4}$ , not  $\frac{\pi}{4}$ .

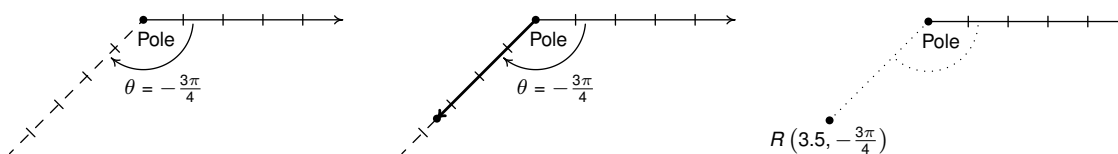


As you may have guessed,  $\theta < 0$  means the rotation away from the polar axis is clockwise instead of counter-clockwise. Hence, to plot  $R(3.5, -\frac{3\pi}{4})$  we have the following.



From an 'angles first' approach, we rotate  $-\frac{3\pi}{4}$  then move out 3.5 units from the pole. We see that  $R$  is the point on the terminal side of  $\theta = -\frac{3\pi}{4}$  which is 3.5 units from the pole.

<sup>3</sup>As with anything in Mathematics, the more ways you have to look at something, the better. The authors encourage the reader to take time to think about both approaches to plotting points given in polar coordinates.



The points  $Q$  and  $R$  above are, in fact, the same point despite the fact that their polar coordinate representations are different. Unlike Cartesian coordinates where  $(a, b)$  and  $(c, d)$  represent the same point if and only if  $a = c$  and  $b = d$ , a point can be represented by infinitely many polar coordinate pairs.

We explore this notion more in the following example.

**Example 1.1.1.** For each point in polar coordinates given below plot the point and then give two additional expressions for the point, one of which has  $r > 0$  and the other with  $r < 0$ .

1.  $P(2, 240^\circ)$
2.  $P(-4, \frac{7\pi}{6})$
3.  $P(117, -\frac{5\pi}{2})$
4.  $P(-3, -\frac{\pi}{4})$

**Solution.**

1. Whether we move 2 units along the polar axis and then rotate  $240^\circ$  or rotate  $240^\circ$  then move out 2 units from the pole, we plot  $P(2, 240^\circ)$  below.



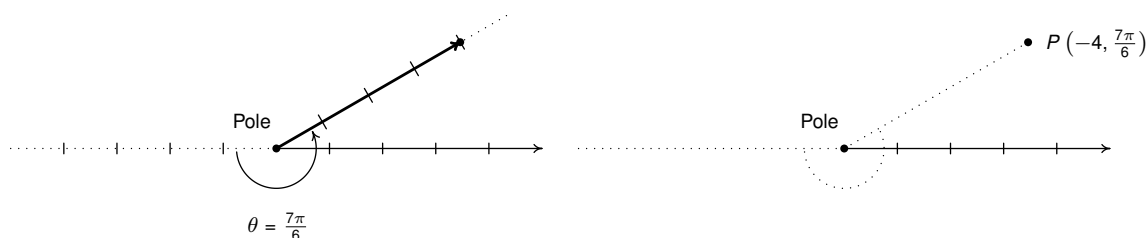
We now set about finding alternate descriptions  $(r, \theta)$  for the point  $P$ . Since  $P$  is 2 units from the pole,  $r = \pm 2$ . Next, we choose angles  $\theta$  for each of the  $r$  values.

The given representation for  $P$  is  $(2, 240^\circ)$  so the angle  $\theta$  we choose for the  $r = 2$  case must be coterminal with  $240^\circ$ . (Can you see why?) We choose  $\theta = -120^\circ$ , so one answer is  $(2, -120^\circ)$ .

For the case  $r = -2$ , we visualize our rotation starting 2 units to the left of the pole. From this position, we need only to rotate  $\theta = 60^\circ$  to arrive at location coterminal with  $240^\circ$ . Hence, our answer here is  $(-2, 60^\circ)$ . We check our answers by plotting them.



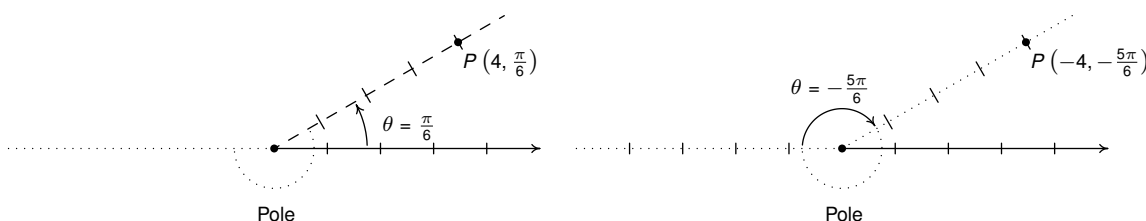
2. We plot  $(-4, \frac{7\pi}{6})$  by first moving 4 units to the left of the pole and then rotating  $\frac{7\pi}{6}$  radians. Since  $r = -4 < 0$ , we find our point lies 4 units from the pole on the terminal side of  $\frac{\pi}{6}$ .



To find alternate descriptions for  $P$ , we note that the distance from  $P$  to the pole is 4 units, so any representation  $(r, \theta)$  for  $P$  must have  $r = \pm 4$ .

As noted above,  $P$  lies on the terminal side of  $\frac{\pi}{6}$ , so this, coupled with  $r = 4$ , gives us  $(4, \frac{\pi}{6})$  as one of our answers.

To find a different representation for  $P$  with  $r = -4$ , we may choose any angle coterminal with the angle  $\theta = \frac{7\pi}{6}$ . We pick  $-\frac{5\pi}{6}$  and get  $(-4, -\frac{5\pi}{6})$  as our second answer.



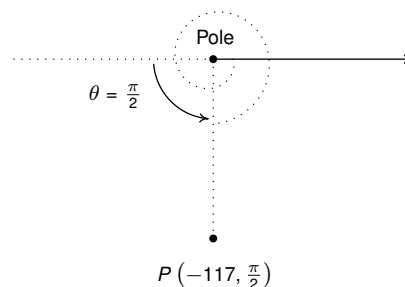
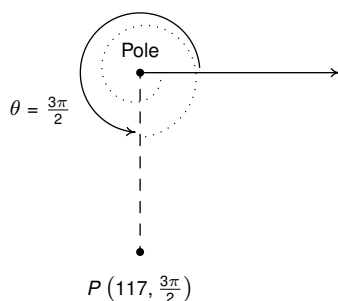
3. To plot  $P(117, -\frac{5\pi}{2})$ , we move along the polar axis 117 units from the pole and rotate *clockwise*  $\frac{5\pi}{2}$  radians as illustrated below.



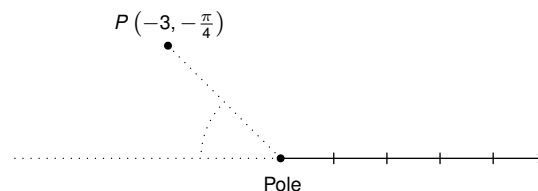
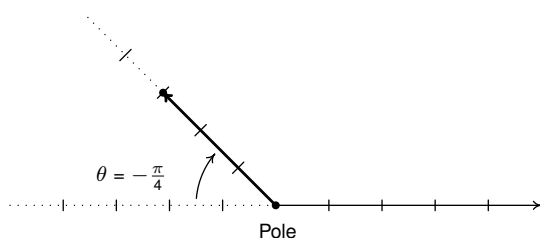
Since  $P$  is 117 units from the pole, any representation  $(r, \theta)$  for  $P$  satisfies  $r = \pm 117$ .

For the  $r = 117$  case, we can take  $\theta$  to be any angle coterminal with  $-\frac{5\pi}{2}$ . In this case, we choose  $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$ , and get  $(117, \frac{3\pi}{2})$  as one answer.

For the  $r = -117$  case, we visualize moving left 117 units from the pole and then rotating through an angle  $\theta$  to reach  $P$ . We find that  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$  works here, so our second answer is  $(-117, \frac{\pi}{2})$ .

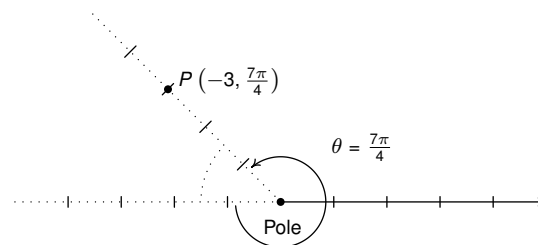
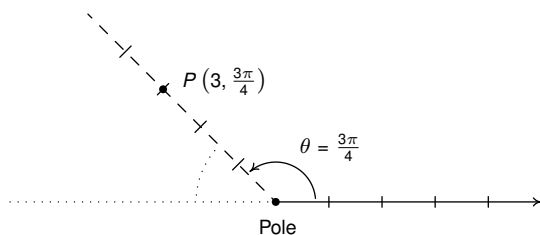


4. We move three units to the left of the pole and follow up with a clockwise rotation of  $\frac{\pi}{4}$  radians to plot  $P(-3, -\frac{\pi}{4})$ . We see that  $P$  lies on the terminal side of  $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ .



Since  $P$  lies on the terminal side of  $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ , one alternative representation for  $P$  is  $(3, \frac{3\pi}{4})$ .

To find a different representation for  $P$  with  $r = -3$ , we may choose any angle coterminal with  $-\frac{\pi}{4}$ . We choose  $\theta = \frac{7\pi}{4}$  for our final answer  $(-3, \frac{7\pi}{4})$ .



□

In light of our work in Example 1.1.1, it should come as no surprise that any given point expressed in polar coordinates has infinitely many other representations in polar coordinates.

The following result characterizes when two sets of polar coordinates determine the same point in the plane. It could be considered as a definition or a theorem, depending on your point of view. We choose to state it as a property of the polar coordinate system.

### Equivalent Representations of Points in Polar Coordinates

Suppose  $(r, \theta)$  and  $(r', \theta')$  are polar coordinates where  $r \neq 0$ ,  $r' \neq 0$  and the angles are measured in radians. Then  $(r, \theta)$  and  $(r', \theta')$  determine the same point  $P$  if and only if one of the following is true:

- $r' = r$  and  $\theta' = \theta + 2\pi k$  for some integer  $k$
- $r' = -r$  and  $\theta' = \theta + (2k + 1)\pi$  for some integer  $k$

All polar coordinates of the form  $(0, \theta)$  represent the pole regardless of the value of  $\theta$ .

The key to understanding this result, and indeed the whole polar coordinate system, is to keep in mind that  $(r, \theta)$  means (directed distance from pole, angle of rotation).

If  $r = 0$ , then no matter how much rotation is performed, the point never leaves the pole. Thus  $(0, \theta)$  is the pole for all values of  $\theta$ .

Now let's assume that neither  $r$  nor  $r'$  is zero. If  $(r, \theta)$  and  $(r', \theta')$  determine the same point  $P$  then the (non-zero) distance from  $P$  to the pole in each case must be the same. Since this distance is controlled by the first coordinate, we have that either  $r' = r$  or  $r' = -r$ .

If  $r' = r$ , then when plotting  $(r, \theta)$  and  $(r', \theta')$ , the angles  $\theta$  and  $\theta'$  have the same initial side. Hence, if  $(r, \theta)$  and  $(r', \theta')$  determine the same point, we must have that  $\theta'$  is coterminal with  $\theta$ . We know that this means  $\theta' = \theta + 2\pi k$  for some integer  $k$ , as required.

If, on the other hand,  $r' = -r$ , then when plotting  $(r, \theta)$  and  $(r', \theta')$ , the initial side of  $\theta'$  is rotated  $\pi$  radians away from the initial side of  $\theta$ . In this case,  $\theta'$  must be coterminal with  $\pi + \theta$ . Hence,  $\theta' = \pi + \theta + 2\pi k$  which we rewrite as  $\theta' = \theta + (2k + 1)\pi$  for some integer  $k$ .

Conversely, if  $r' = r$  and  $\theta' = \theta + 2\pi k$  for some integer  $k$ , then the points  $P(r, \theta)$  and  $P'(r', \theta')$  lie the same (directed) distance from the pole on the terminal sides of coterminal angles, and hence are the same point.

Now suppose  $r' = -r$  and  $\theta' = \theta + (2k + 1)\pi$  for some integer  $k$ . To plot  $P$ , we first move a directed distance  $r$  from the pole; to plot  $P'$ , our first step is to move the same distance from the pole as  $P$ , but in the opposite direction. At this intermediate stage, we have two points equidistant from the pole rotated exactly  $\pi$  radians apart. Since  $\theta' = \theta + (2k + 1)\pi = (\theta + \pi) + 2\pi k$  for some integer  $k$ , we see that  $\theta'$  is coterminal to  $(\theta + \pi)$  and it is this extra  $\pi$  radians of rotation which aligns the points  $P$  and  $P'$ .

Next, we marry the polar coordinate system with the Cartesian (rectangular) coordinate system. To do so, we identify the pole and polar axis in the polar system to the origin and positive  $x$ -axis, respectively, in the rectangular system. We get the following result.

### Theorem 1.1. Conversion Between Rectangular and Polar Coordinates:

Suppose  $P$  is represented in rectangular coordinates as  $(x, y)$  and in polar coordinates as  $(r, \theta)$ . Then

- $x = r \cos(\theta)$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta)$
- $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$  and  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{y}{x}$  (provided  $x \neq 0$ )

In the case  $r > 0$ , Theorem 1.1 is an immediate consequence of Theorems ?? and ??.

If  $r < 0$ , then we know an alternate representation for  $(r, \theta)$  is  $(-r, \theta + \pi)$ . Since in this case,  $-r > 0$ , we know the theorem as stated is true for the representation  $(-r, \theta + \pi)$  so we apply it here.

Applying Theorem 1.1 to  $(-r, \theta + \pi)$  gives<sup>4</sup>  $x = (-r) \cos(\theta + \pi) = (-r)(-\cos(\theta)) = r \cos(\theta)$  as well as  $y = (-r) \sin(\theta + \pi) = (-r)(-\sin(\theta)) = r \sin(\theta)$ .

Moreover,  $x^2 + y^2 = (-r)^2 = r^2$ , and  $\frac{y}{x} = \tan(\theta + \pi) = \tan(\theta)$ , so the theorem is true in this case, too.

The remaining case is  $r = 0$ , in which case  $(r, \theta) = (0, \theta)$  is the pole. Since the pole is identified with the origin  $(0, 0)$  in rectangular coordinates, the theorem in this case amounts to checking '0 = 0.'

Since we have argued that Theorem 1.1 is true in all cases, we put it to good use in the following example.

**Example 1.1.2.** Convert each point in rectangular coordinates given below into polar coordinates with  $r \geq 0$  and  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ . Use exact values if possible and round any approximate values to two decimal places. Check your answer by converting them back to rectangular coordinates.

1.  $P(2, -2\sqrt{3})$
2.  $Q(-3, -3)$
3.  $R(0, -3)$
4.  $S(-3, 4)$

**Solution.**

Even though we are not explicitly told to do so, we can avoid many common mistakes by taking the time to plot the points before we do any calculations.

1. Plotting  $P(2, -2\sqrt{3})$ , we find  $P$  lies in Quadrant IV. With  $x = 2$  and  $y = -2\sqrt{3}$ , we calculate  $r^2 = x^2 + y^2 = (2)^2 + (-2\sqrt{3})^2 = 4 + 12 = 16$  so  $r = \pm 4$ . To satisfy  $r \geq 0$ , we choose  $r = 4$ .

To find  $\theta$ , know  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{y}{x} = \frac{-2\sqrt{3}}{2} = -\sqrt{3}$ . This tells us  $\theta$  has a reference angle of  $\frac{\pi}{3}$ , and since  $P$  lies in Quadrant IV, we know  $\theta$  is a Quadrant IV angle. To satisfy the stipulation that  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ , we choose  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{3}$ . Hence, our answer is  $(4, \frac{5\pi}{3})$ .

To check, we convert the polar representation  $(r, \theta) = (4, \frac{5\pi}{3})$  back to rectangular coordinates. We find  $x = r \cos(\theta) = 4 \cos(\frac{5\pi}{3}) = 4(\frac{1}{2}) = 2$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta) = 4 \sin(\frac{5\pi}{3}) = 4(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}) = -2\sqrt{3}$ .

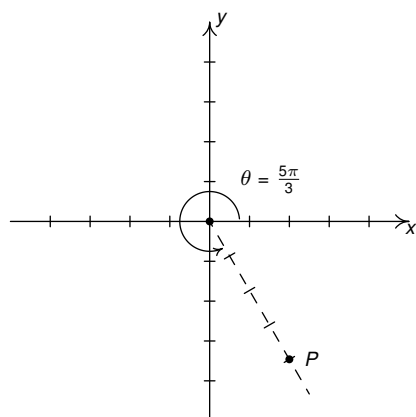
2. The point  $Q(-3, -3)$  lies in Quadrant III. Using  $x = y = -3$ , we get  $r^2 = (-3)^2 + (-3)^2 = 18$  so  $r = \pm\sqrt{18} = \pm 3\sqrt{2}$ . To satisfy  $r \geq 0$ , we choose  $r = 3\sqrt{2}$ .

We find  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{-3}{-3} = 1$ , which means  $\theta$  has a reference angle of  $\frac{\pi}{4}$ . Since  $Q$  lies in Quadrant III, we choose  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{4}$ , to satisfy the requirement that  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ . Our final answer is  $(3\sqrt{2}, \frac{5\pi}{4})$ .

Checking our answer, we find that  $x = r \cos(\theta) = (3\sqrt{2}) \cos(\frac{5\pi}{4}) = (3\sqrt{2})(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}) = -3$  and compute  $y = r \sin(\theta) = (3\sqrt{2}) \sin(\frac{5\pi}{4}) = (3\sqrt{2})(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}) = -3$ , so we are done.

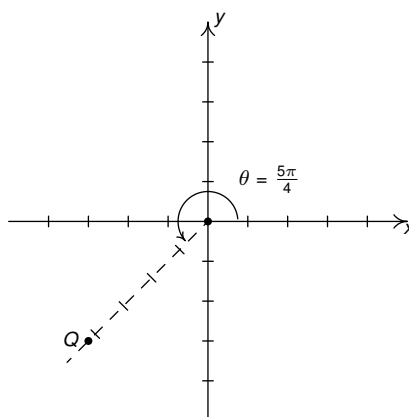
<sup>4</sup>Well, Theorem 1.1 along with the identities  $\cos(\theta + \pi) = -\cos(\theta)$  and  $\sin(\theta + \pi) = -\sin(\theta)$ ...





$P$  has rectangular coordinates  $(2, -2\sqrt{3})$

$P$  has polar coordinates  $(4, \frac{5\pi}{3})$



$Q$  has rectangular coordinates  $(-3, -3)$

$Q$  has polar coordinates  $(3\sqrt{2}, \frac{5\pi}{4})$

3. The point  $R(0, -3)$  lies along the negative  $y$ -axis. While we could go through the usual computations<sup>5</sup> to find the polar form of  $R$ , in this case it is much more efficient to find the polar coordinates of  $R$  using the definition.

Since the pole is identified with the origin, we see the point  $R$  is 3 units from the pole. Hence in the polar representation  $(r, \theta)$  of  $R$  we know  $r = \pm 3$ . To satisfy  $r \geq 0$ , we choose  $r = 3$ .

Concerning  $\theta$ , we once again find more or less 'by inspection' that  $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$  satisfies  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$  with its terminal side along the negative  $y$ -axis. Hence, our answer is  $(3, \frac{3\pi}{2})$ .

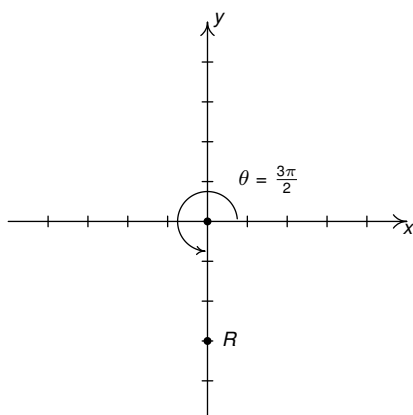
To check, we note  $x = r \cos(\theta) = 3 \cos(\frac{3\pi}{2}) = (3)(0) = 0$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta) = 3 \sin(\frac{3\pi}{2}) = 3(-1) = -3$ .

4. The point  $S(-3, 4)$  lies in Quadrant II. With  $x = -3$  and  $y = 4$ , we get  $r^2 = (-3)^2 + (4)^2 = 25$  so  $r = \pm 5$ . As usual, we choose  $r = 5 \geq 0$  and proceed to determine  $\theta$ .

We have  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{y}{x} = \frac{4}{-3} = -\frac{4}{3}$ , and since this isn't the tangent of one of the common angles, we resort to using the arctangent function. Since  $\theta$  lies in Quadrant II and must satisfy  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ , we choose  $\theta = \pi - \arctan(\frac{4}{3})$  radians. Hence, our answer is  $(r, \theta) = (5, \pi - \arctan(\frac{4}{3})) \approx (5, 2.21)$ .

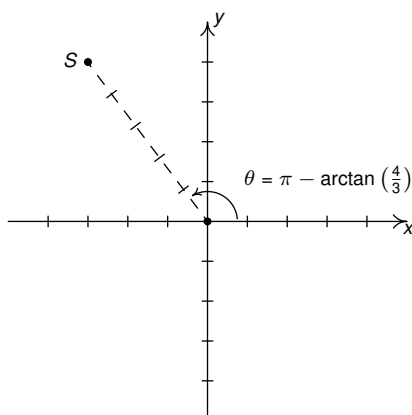
To check our answers requires a bit of tenacity since we need to simplify expressions of the form:  $\cos(\pi - \arctan(\frac{4}{3}))$  and  $\sin(\pi - \arctan(\frac{4}{3}))$ . These are good review exercises (see Section ??) and are hence left to the reader. We find  $\cos(\pi - \arctan(\frac{4}{3})) = -\frac{3}{5}$  and  $\sin(\pi - \arctan(\frac{4}{3})) = \frac{4}{5}$ , so that  $x = r \cos(\theta) = (5)(-\frac{3}{5}) = -3$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta) = (5)(\frac{4}{5}) = 4$  which confirms our answer.

<sup>5</sup>Since  $x = 0$ , we would have to determine  $\theta$  geometrically.



$R$  has rectangular coordinates  $(0, -3)$

$R$  has polar coordinates  $(3, \frac{3\pi}{2})$



$S$  has rectangular coordinates  $(-3, 4)$

$S$  has polar coordinates  $(5, \pi - \arctan(\frac{4}{3}))$

□

Now that we've had practice converting representations of *points* between the rectangular and polar coordinate systems, we now set about converting *equations* from one system to another.

Just as we've used equations in  $x$  and  $y$  to represent relations in rectangular coordinates (see Section ??), equations in the variables  $r$  and  $\theta$  represent relations in polar coordinates. We convert equations between the two systems using Theorem 1.1 as the next example illustrates.

### Example 1.1.3.

- Convert each equation in rectangular coordinates into an equation in polar coordinates.

(a)  $(x - 3)^2 + y^2 = 9$

(b)  $y = -x$

(c)  $y = x^2$

- Convert each equation in polar coordinates into an equation in rectangular coordinates.

(a)  $r = -3$

(b)  $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$

(c)  $r = 1 - \cos(\theta)$

### Solution.

- One strategy to convert an equation from rectangular to polar coordinates is to replace every occurrence of  $x$  with  $r \cos(\theta)$  and every occurrence of  $y$  with  $r \sin(\theta)$  and use identities to simplify. This is the technique we employ below.

- (a) We start by substituting  $x = r \cos(\theta)$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta)$  into  $(x - 3)^2 + y^2 = 9$  and simplifying. With no real direction in which to proceed, we follow our mathematical instincts.<sup>6</sup>

$$(r \cos(\theta) - 3)^2 + (r \sin(\theta))^2 = 9$$

$$r^2 \cos^2(\theta) - 6r \cos(\theta) + 9 + r^2 \sin^2(\theta) = 9$$

$$r^2 (\cos^2(\theta) + \sin^2(\theta)) - 6r \cos(\theta) = 0 \quad \text{Subtract 9 from both sides.}$$

$$r^2 - 6r \cos(\theta) = 0 \quad \text{Since } \cos^2(\theta) + \sin^2(\theta) = 1$$

$$r(r - 6 \cos(\theta)) = 0 \quad \text{Factor.}$$

<sup>6</sup>Experience is the mother of all instinct, and necessity is the mother of invention. Study this example and see what techniques are employed, then try your best to get your answers in the homework to match Jeff's.

We get  $r = 0$  or  $r = 6 \cos(\theta)$ . From Section ?? we know the equation  $(x - 3)^2 + y^2 = 9$  describes a circle, and since  $r = 0$  describes just a point (namely the pole/origin), we choose  $r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  for our final answer.<sup>7</sup>

- (b) Substituting  $x = r \cos(\theta)$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta)$  into  $y = -x$  gives  $r \sin(\theta) = -r \cos(\theta)$ . Rearranging, we get  $r \cos(\theta) + r \sin(\theta) = 0$  or  $r(\cos(\theta) + \sin(\theta)) = 0$ . This gives  $r = 0$  or  $\cos(\theta) + \sin(\theta) = 0$ . Solving the latter equation for  $\theta$ , we get  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{4} + \pi k$  for integers  $k$ .

As we did in the previous example, we take a step back and think geometrically. We know  $y = -x$  describes a line through the origin. As before,  $r = 0$  describes the origin, but nothing else. Consider the equation  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{4}$ . In this equation, the variable  $r$  is free,<sup>8</sup> meaning it can assume any and all values including  $r = 0$ .

If we imagine plotting points  $(r, -\frac{\pi}{4})$  for all conceivable values of  $r$  (positive, negative and zero), we are essentially drawing the line containing the terminal side of  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{4}$  which is none other than  $y = -x$ . Hence, we can take as our final answer  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{4}$  here.<sup>9</sup>

- (c) Substituting  $x = r \cos(\theta)$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta)$  into  $y = x^2$  gives  $r \sin(\theta) = (r \cos(\theta))^2$ , or  $r^2 \cos^2(\theta) - r \sin(\theta) = 0$ . Factoring, we get  $r(r \cos^2(\theta) - \sin(\theta)) = 0$  so either  $r = 0$  or  $r \cos^2(\theta) = \sin(\theta)$ .

We can solve  $r \cos^2(\theta) = \sin(\theta)$  for  $r$  by dividing both sides of the equation by  $\cos^2(\theta)$ , but as a general rule, we never divide through by a quantity that may be 0.

In this particular case, we are safe since if  $\cos^2(\theta) = 0$ , then  $\cos(\theta) = 0$ , and for the equation  $r \cos^2(\theta) = \sin(\theta)$  to hold, then  $\sin(\theta)$  would also have to be 0. Since there are no angles with both  $\cos(\theta) = 0$  and  $\sin(\theta) = 0$ , we are not losing any information by dividing both sides of  $r \cos^2(\theta) = \sin(\theta)$  by  $\cos^2(\theta)$ .

Solving  $r \cos^2(\theta) = \sin(\theta)$  gives  $r = \frac{\sin(\theta)}{\cos^2(\theta)}$ , or  $r = \sec(\theta) \tan(\theta)$ . As before, the  $r = 0$  case is recovered in the solution  $r = \sec(\theta) \tan(\theta)$  (let  $\theta = 0$ ), so  $r = \sec(\theta) \tan(\theta)$  is our final answer.

2. As a general rule, converting equations from polar to rectangular coordinates isn't as straight forward as the reverse process. We could solve  $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$  for  $r$  to get  $r = \pm \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$  and solving  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{y}{x}$  requires the arctangent function to get  $\theta = \arctan\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) + \pi k$  for integers  $k$ .

Since neither of these expressions for  $r$  and  $\theta$  are especially user-friendly, so we opt for a second strategy – rearrange the given polar equation so that the expressions  $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$ ,  $r \cos(\theta) = x$ ,  $r \sin(\theta) = y$  and/or  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{y}{x}$  present themselves.

- (a) Starting with  $r = -3$ , we can square both sides to get  $r^2 = (-3)^2$  or  $r^2 = 9$ . We may now substitute  $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$  to get the equation  $x^2 + y^2 = 9$ .

As we have seen,<sup>10</sup> squaring an equation does not, in general, produce an equivalent equation. The concern here is that the equation  $r^2 = 9$  might be satisfied by more points than  $r = -3$ .

<sup>7</sup>Note when we substitute  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$  into the equation  $r = 6 \cos(\theta)$ , we recover the point  $r = 0$ .

<sup>8</sup>See Section ??.

<sup>9</sup>We could take it to be any of  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{4} + \pi k$  for integers  $k$ .

<sup>10</sup>See Exercises ?? - ?? in Section ??, for instance ...

On the surface, this certainly appears to be the case since  $r^2 = 9$  is equivalent to  $r = \pm 3$ , not just  $r = -3$ . That being said, any point with polar coordinates  $(3, \theta)$  can be represented as  $(-3, \theta + \pi)$ , which means any point  $(r, \theta)$  whose polar coordinates satisfy the relation  $r = \pm 3$  has an equivalent<sup>11</sup> representation which satisfies  $r = -3$ .

- (b) We take the tangent of both sides the equation  $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$  to get  $\tan(\theta) = \tan\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right) = \sqrt{3}$ . Since  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{y}{x}$ , we get  $\frac{y}{x} = \sqrt{3}$  or  $y = x\sqrt{3}$ . Of course, we pause a moment to wonder if, geometrically, the equations  $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$  and  $y = x\sqrt{3}$  generate the same set of points.<sup>12</sup> The same argument presented in number 1b applies equally well here so we are done.
- (c) Once again, we need to manipulate  $r = 1 - \cos(\theta)$  a bit before using the conversion formulas given in Theorem 1.1. We could square both sides of this equation like we did in part 2a above to obtain an  $r^2$  on the left hand side, but that does nothing helpful for the right hand side.

Instead, we multiply both sides by  $r$  to obtain  $r^2 = r - r\cos(\theta)$ . We now have an  $r^2$  and an  $r\cos(\theta)$  in the equation, which we can easily handle, but we also have another  $r$  to deal with. Rewriting the equation as  $r = r^2 + r\cos(\theta)$  and squaring both sides yields  $r^2 = (r^2 + r\cos(\theta))^2$ . Substituting  $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$  and  $r\cos(\theta) = x$  gives  $x^2 + y^2 = (x^2 + y^2 + x)^2$ .

Once again, we have performed some algebraic maneuvers which may have altered the set of points described by the original equation. First, we multiplied both sides by  $r$ . This means that now  $r = 0$  is a viable solution to the equation. In the original equation,  $r = 1 - \cos(\theta)$ , we see that  $\theta = 0$  gives  $r = 0$ , so the multiplication by  $r$  doesn't introduce any new points.

The squaring of both sides of this equation is also a reason to pause. That is, are there points with coordinates  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfy  $r^2 = (r^2 + r\cos(\theta))^2$  but do not satisfy  $r = r^2 + r\cos(\theta)$ ?

Suppose  $(r', \theta')$  satisfies  $r^2 = (r^2 + r\cos(\theta))^2$ . Then  $r' = \pm((r')^2 + r'\cos(\theta'))$ . If it turns out that  $r' = (r')^2 + r'\cos(\theta')$ , then we are done.

If  $r' = -((r')^2 + r'\cos(\theta')) = -(r')^2 - r'\cos(\theta')$ , we claim that the coordinates  $(-r', \theta' + \pi)$ , which determine the same point as  $(r', \theta')$ , satisfy  $r = r^2 + r\cos(\theta)$ . To show this, we substitute  $r = -r'$  and  $\theta = \theta' + \pi$  into the equation  $r = r^2 + r\cos(\theta)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} -r' &\stackrel{?}{=} (-r')^2 + (-r'\cos(\theta' + \pi)) \\ -(-(r')^2 - r'\cos(\theta')) &\stackrel{?}{=} (r')^2 - r'\cos(\theta' + \pi) && \text{Since } r' = -(r')^2 - r'\cos(\theta') \\ (r')^2 + r'\cos(\theta') &\stackrel{?}{=} (r')^2 - r'(-\cos(\theta')) && \text{Since } \cos(\theta' + \pi) = -\cos(\theta') \\ (r')^2 + r'\cos(\theta') &\stackrel{\checkmark}{=} (r')^2 + r'\cos(\theta') \end{aligned}$$

<sup>11</sup>As *ordered pairs*,  $(3, 0)$  and  $(-3, \pi)$  are different, but since they correspond to the same point in the plane, we consider them 'equivalent' in this context. Technically speaking, the equations  $r^2 = 9$  and  $r = -3$  represent different relations per Definition ?? in Section ?? since they generate different sets of ordered pairs. Since polar coordinates were defined geometrically to describe the location of points in the plane, however, we concern ourselves only with ensuring that the sets of *points* in the plane generated by two equations are the same.

<sup>12</sup>In addition to taking the tangent of both sides of an equation (There are infinitely many solutions to  $\tan(\theta) = \sqrt{3}$ , and  $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$  is only one of them!), we also went from  $\frac{y}{x} = \sqrt{3}$ , in which  $x$  cannot be 0, to  $y = x\sqrt{3}$  in which we assume  $x$  can be 0.

Since both sides worked out to be equal,  $(-r', \theta' + \pi)$  satisfies  $r = r^2 + r \cos(\theta)$ .

Hence, any point  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfies  $r^2 = (r^2 + r \cos(\theta))^2$  has a representation which satisfies  $r = r^2 + r \cos(\theta)$ , so a rectangular representation of  $r = 1 - \cos(\theta)$  is  $x^2 + y^2 = (x^2 + y^2 + x)^2$ .  $\square$

In practice, much of the pedantic verification of the equivalence of equations in Example 1.1.3 is left unsaid. Indeed, in most textbooks, squaring equations like  $r = -3$  to arrive at  $r^2 = 9$  happens without a second thought. Your instructor will ultimately decide how much, if any, justification is warranted.

If you take anything away from Example 1.1.3, it should be that relatively simple equations in rectangular coordinates, such as  $y = x^2$ , can become quite complicated in polar coordinates, and vice-versa.

In the next section, we devote our attention to graphing equations like the ones given in Example 1.1.3 number 2 on the Cartesian coordinate plane without converting back to rectangular coordinates. If nothing else, number 2c above shows the price we pay if we insist on always converting to back to the more familiar rectangular coordinate system.

### 1.1.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1 - 16, plot the point given in polar coordinates and then give three different expressions for the point such that (a)  $r < 0$  and  $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$ , (b)  $r > 0$  and  $\theta \leq 0$  (c)  $r > 0$  and  $\theta \geq 2\pi$

1.  $\left(2, \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
2.  $\left(5, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$
3.  $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$
4.  $\left(\frac{5}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$
5.  $\left(12, -\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$
6.  $\left(3, -\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$
7.  $(2\sqrt{2}, -\pi)$
8.  $\left(\frac{7}{2}, -\frac{13\pi}{6}\right)$
9.  $(-20, 3\pi)$
10.  $\left(-4, \frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$
11.  $\left(-1, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$
12.  $\left(-3, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$
13.  $\left(-3, -\frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$
14.  $\left(-2.5, -\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
15.  $\left(-\sqrt{5}, -\frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$
16.  $(-\pi, -\pi)$

In Exercises 17 - 36, convert the point from polar coordinates into rectangular coordinates.

17.  $\left(5, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$
18.  $\left(2, \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
19.  $\left(11, -\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$
20.  $(-20, 3\pi)$
21.  $\left(\frac{3}{5}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$
22.  $\left(-4, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$
23.  $\left(9, \frac{7\pi}{2}\right)$
24.  $\left(-5, -\frac{9\pi}{4}\right)$
25.  $\left(42, \frac{13\pi}{6}\right)$
26.  $(-117, 117\pi)$
27.  $(6, \arctan(2))$
28.  $(10, \arctan(3))$
29.  $\left(-3, \arctan\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\right)$
30.  $\left(5, \arctan\left(-\frac{4}{3}\right)\right)$
31.  $\left(2, \pi - \arctan\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\right)$
32.  $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \pi - \arctan(5)\right)$
33.  $\left(-1, \pi + \arctan\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\right)$
34.  $\left(\frac{2}{3}, \pi + \arctan(2\sqrt{2})\right)$
35.  $(\pi, \arctan(\pi))$
36.  $\left(13, \arctan\left(\frac{12}{5}\right)\right)$

In Exercises 37 - 56, plot each point given in rectangular coordinates and convert to polar coordinates. Choose  $r \geq 0$  and  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ .

37.  $(0, 5)$
38.  $(3, \sqrt{3})$
39.  $(7, -7)$
40.  $(-3, -\sqrt{3})$
41.  $(-3, 0)$
42.  $(-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$
43.  $(-4, -4\sqrt{3})$
44.  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}, -\frac{1}{4}\right)$

45.  $\left(-\frac{3}{10}, -\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{10}\right)$       46.  $(-\sqrt{5}, -\sqrt{5})$       47.  $(6, 8)$       48.  $(\sqrt{5}, 2\sqrt{5})$
49.  $(-8, 1)$       50.  $(-2\sqrt{10}, 6\sqrt{10})$       51.  $(-5, -12)$       52.  $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{5}}{15}, -\frac{2\sqrt{5}}{15}\right)$
53.  $(24, -7)$       54.  $(12, -9)$       55.  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}, \frac{\sqrt{6}}{4}\right)$       56.  $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{65}}{5}, \frac{2\sqrt{65}}{5}\right)$

In Exercises 57 - 76, convert the equation from rectangular coordinates into polar coordinates. Solve for  $r$  in all but 60 through 63. In Exercises 60 - 63, solve for  $\theta$

57.  $x = 6$       58.  $x = -3$       59.  $y = 7$       60.  $y = 0$
61.  $y = -x$       62.  $y = x\sqrt{3}$       63.  $y = 2x$       64.  $x^2 + y^2 = 25$
65.  $x^2 + y^2 = 117$       66.  $y = 4x - 19$       67.  $x = 3y + 1$       68.  $y = -3x^2$
69.  $4x = y^2$       70.  $x^2 + y^2 - 2y = 0$       71.  $x^2 - 4x + y^2 = 0$       72.  $x^2 + y^2 = x$
73.  $y^2 = 7y - x^2$       74.  $(x + 2)^2 + y^2 = 4$
75.  $x^2 + (y - 3)^2 = 9$       76.  $4x^2 + 4\left(y - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = 1$

In Exercises 77 - 96, convert the equation from polar coordinates into rectangular coordinates.

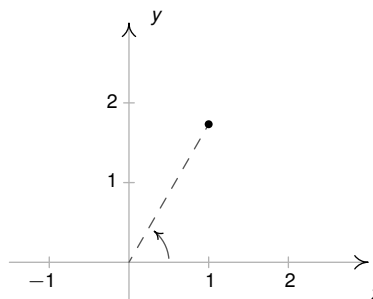
77.  $r = 7$       78.  $r = -3$       79.  $r = \sqrt{2}$       80.  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$
81.  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$       82.  $\theta = \pi$       83.  $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$       84.  $r = 4 \cos(\theta)$
85.  $5r = \cos(\theta)$       86.  $r = 3 \sin(\theta)$       87.  $r = -2 \sin(\theta)$       88.  $r = 7 \sec(\theta)$
89.  $12r = \csc(\theta)$       90.  $r = -2 \sec(\theta)$       91.  $r = -\sqrt{5} \csc(\theta)$       92.  $r = 2 \sec(\theta) \tan(\theta)$
93.  $r = -\csc(\theta) \cot(\theta)$       94.  $r^2 = \sin(2\theta)$       95.  $r = 1 - 2 \cos(\theta)$       96.  $r = 1 + \sin(\theta)$

97. Convert the origin  $(0, 0)$  into polar coordinates in four different ways.

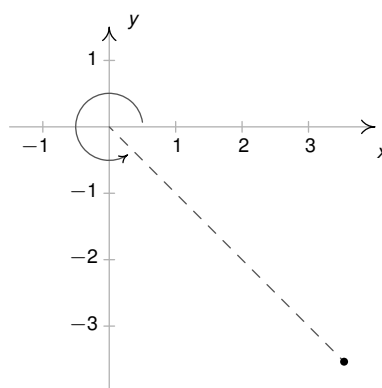
98. With the help of your classmates, use the Law of Cosines to develop a formula for the distance between two points in polar coordinates.

### 1.1.2 Answers

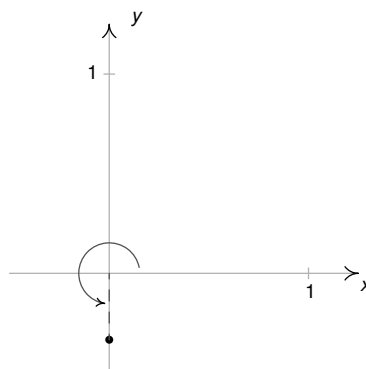
1.  $\left(2, \frac{\pi}{3}\right), \left(-2, \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$   
 $\left(2, -\frac{5\pi}{3}\right), \left(2, \frac{7\pi}{3}\right)$



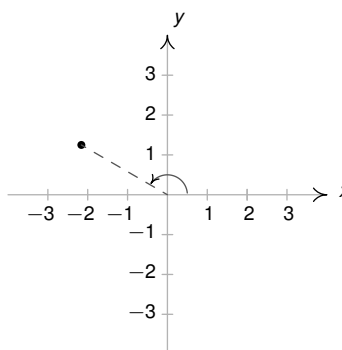
2.  $\left(5, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right), \left(-5, \frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$   
 $\left(5, -\frac{\pi}{4}\right), \left(5, \frac{15\pi}{4}\right)$



3.  $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right), \left(-\frac{1}{3}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$   
 $\left(\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{7\pi}{2}\right)$

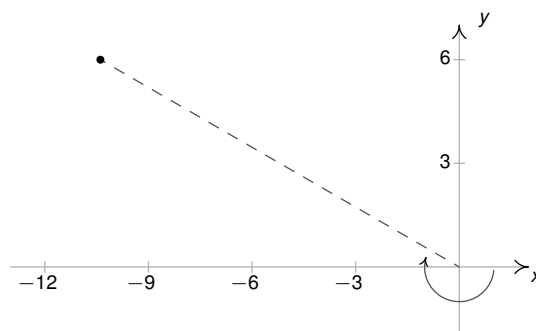


4.  $\left(\frac{5}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right), \left(-\frac{5}{2}, \frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$   
 $\left(\frac{5}{2}, -\frac{7\pi}{6}\right), \left(\frac{5}{2}, \frac{17\pi}{6}\right)$

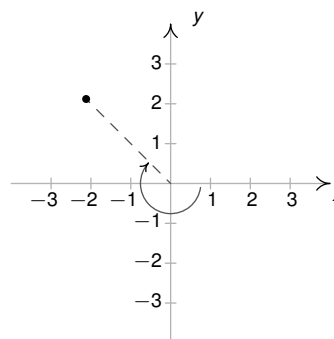




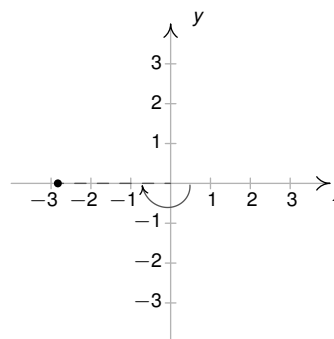
5.  $\left(12, -\frac{7\pi}{6}\right), \left(-12, \frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$   
 $\left(12, -\frac{19\pi}{6}\right), \left(12, \frac{17\pi}{6}\right)$



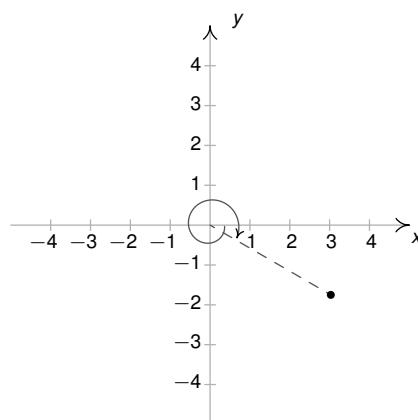
6.  $\left(3, -\frac{5\pi}{4}\right), \left(-3, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$   
 $\left(3, -\frac{13\pi}{4}\right), \left(3, \frac{11\pi}{4}\right)$



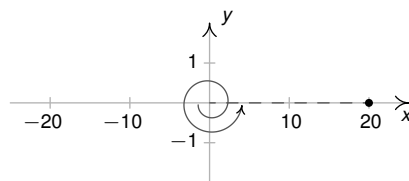
7.  $(2\sqrt{2}, -\pi), (-2\sqrt{2}, 0)$   
 $(2\sqrt{2}, -3\pi), (2\sqrt{2}, 3\pi)$



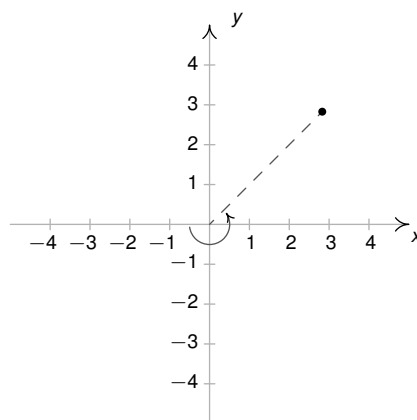
8.  $\left(\frac{7}{2}, -\frac{13\pi}{6}\right), \left(-\frac{7}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$   
 $\left(\frac{7}{2}, -\frac{\pi}{6}\right), \left(\frac{7}{2}, \frac{23\pi}{6}\right)$



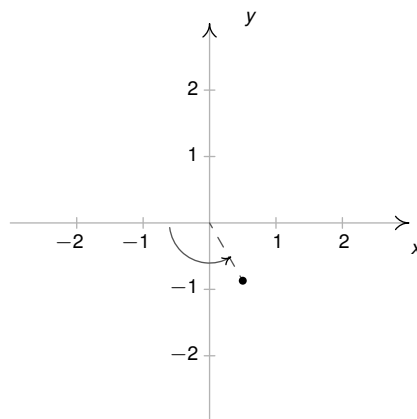
9.  $(-20, 3\pi), (-20, \pi)$   
 $(20, -2\pi), (20, 4\pi)$



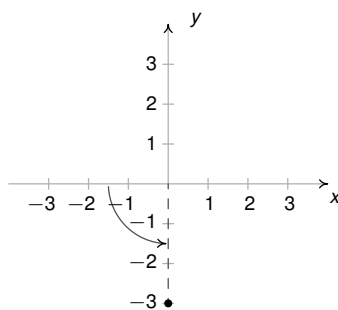
10.  $\left(-4, \frac{5\pi}{4}\right), \left(-4, \frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$   
 $\left(4, -\frac{7\pi}{4}\right), \left(4, \frac{9\pi}{4}\right)$



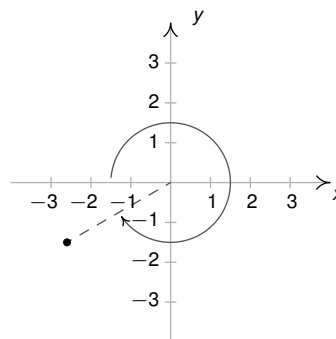
11.  $\left(-1, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right), \left(-1, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$   
 $\left(1, -\frac{\pi}{3}\right), \left(1, \frac{11\pi}{3}\right)$



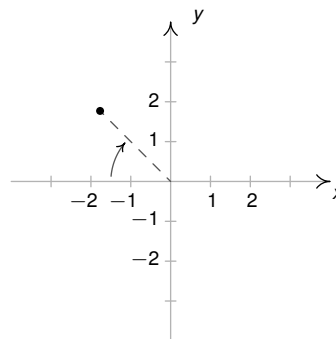
12.  $\left(-3, \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(-3, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$   
 $\left(3, -\frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(3, \frac{7\pi}{2}\right)$



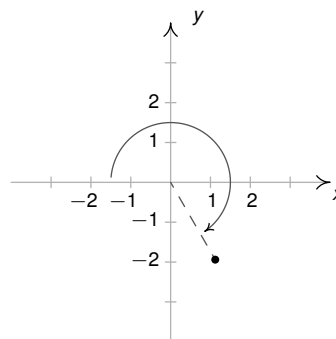
13.  $\left(-3, -\frac{11\pi}{6}\right), \left(-3, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$   
 $\left(3, -\frac{5\pi}{6}\right), \left(3, \frac{19\pi}{6}\right)$



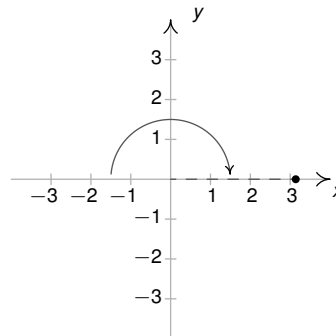
14.  $\left(-2.5, -\frac{\pi}{4}\right), \left(-2.5, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$   
 $\left(2.5, -\frac{5\pi}{4}\right), \left(2.5, \frac{11\pi}{4}\right)$



15.  $\left(-\sqrt{5}, -\frac{4\pi}{3}\right), \left(-\sqrt{5}, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$   
 $\left(\sqrt{5}, -\frac{\pi}{3}\right), \left(\sqrt{5}, \frac{11\pi}{3}\right)$



16.  $(-\pi, -\pi), (-\pi, \pi)$   
 $(\pi, -2\pi), (\pi, 2\pi)$



17.  $\left(\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$
18.  $(1, \sqrt{3})$
19.  $\left(-\frac{11\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{11}{2}\right)$
20.  $(20, 0)$
21.  $\left(0, \frac{3}{5}\right)$
22.  $(2\sqrt{3}, -2)$
23.  $(0, -9)$
24.  $\left(-\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$
25.  $(21\sqrt{3}, 21)$
26.  $(117, 0)$
27.  $\left(\frac{6\sqrt{5}}{5}, \frac{12\sqrt{5}}{5}\right)$
28.  $(\sqrt{10}, 3\sqrt{10})$
29.  $\left(-\frac{9}{5}, -\frac{12}{5}\right)$
30.  $(3, -4)$
31.  $\left(-\frac{4\sqrt{5}}{5}, \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}\right)$
32.  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{26}}{52}, -\frac{5\sqrt{26}}{52}\right)$
33.  $\left(\frac{4}{5}, \frac{3}{5}\right)$
34.  $\left(-\frac{2}{9}, -\frac{4\sqrt{2}}{9}\right)$
35.  $\left(\frac{\pi}{\sqrt{1+\pi^2}}, \frac{\pi^2}{\sqrt{1+\pi^2}}\right)$
36.  $(5, 12)$
37.  $\left(5, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$
38.  $\left(2\sqrt{3}, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$
39.  $\left(7\sqrt{2}, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$
40.  $\left(2\sqrt{3}, \frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$
41.  $(3, \pi)$
42.  $\left(2, \frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$
43.  $\left(8, \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$
44.  $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$
45.  $\left(\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$
46.  $\left(\sqrt{10}, \frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$
47.  $\left(10, \arctan\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\right)$
48.  $(5, \arctan(2))$
49.  $\left(\sqrt{65}, \pi - \arctan\left(\frac{1}{8}\right)\right)$
50.  $(20, \pi - \arctan(3))$
51.  $\left(13, \pi + \arctan\left(\frac{12}{5}\right)\right)$
52.  $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \pi + \arctan(2)\right)$
53.  $\left(25, 2\pi - \arctan\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)\right)$
54.  $\left(15, 2\pi - \arctan\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\right)$
55.  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
56.  $(\sqrt{13}, \pi - \arctan(2))$
57.  $r = 6 \sec(\theta)$
58.  $r = -3 \sec(\theta)$
59.  $r = 7 \csc(\theta)$
60.  $\theta = 0$
61.  $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{4}$
62.  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$
63.  $\theta = \arctan(2)$
64.  $r = 5$
65.  $r = \sqrt{117}$
66.  $r = \frac{19}{4 \cos(\theta) - \sin(\theta)}$
67.  $x = \frac{1}{\cos(\theta) - 3 \sin(\theta)}$
68.  $r = \frac{-\sec(\theta) \tan(\theta)}{3}$
69.  $r = 4 \csc(\theta) \cot(\theta)$
70.  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$
71.  $r = 4 \cos(\theta)$
72.  $r = \cos(\theta)$

73.  $r = 7 \sin(\theta)$

74.  $r = -4 \cos(\theta)$

75.  $r = 6 \sin(\theta)$

76.  $r = \sin(\theta)$

77.  $x^2 + y^2 = 49$

78.  $x^2 + y^2 = 9$

79.  $x^2 + y^2 = 2$

80.  $y = x$

81.  $y = -\sqrt{3}x$

82.  $y = 0$

83.  $x = 0$

84.  $x^2 + y^2 = 4x$  or  $(x - 2)^2 + y^2 = 4$

85.  $5x^2 + 5y^2 = x$  or  $\left(x - \frac{1}{10}\right)^2 + y^2 = \frac{1}{100}$

86.  $x^2 + y^2 = 3y$  or  $x^2 + \left(y - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{9}{4}$

87.  $x^2 + y^2 = -2y$  or  $x^2 + (y + 1)^2 = 1$

88.  $x = 7$

89.  $y = \frac{1}{12}$

90.  $x = -2$

91.  $y = -\sqrt{5}$

92.  $x^2 = 2y$

93.  $y^2 = -x$

94.  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 2xy$

95.  $(x^2 + 2x + y^2)^2 = x^2 + y^2$

96.  $(x^2 + y^2 - y)^2 = x^2 + y^2$

97. Any point of the form  $(0, \theta)$  will work, e.g.  $(0, \pi)$ ,  $(0, -117)$ ,  $\left(0, \frac{23\pi}{4}\right)$  and  $(0, 0)$ .

## 1.2 The Graphs of Polar Equations

In this section, we discuss how to graph equations relating the *polar coordinate* variables  $r$  and  $\theta$  on the *rectangular coordinate* plane. Since every point in the plane has infinitely many different representations in polar coordinates, in order for a point  $P$  to be on the graph of a given equation, there must be *at least one* representation of  $P(r, \theta)$  that satisfies that equation.

In our first example, only one of the variables  $r$  and  $\theta$  is present making the other variable free.<sup>1</sup> This makes these graphs easier to visualize than others.

**Example 1.2.1.** Graph the following polar equations in the  $xy$ -plane.

1.  $r = 4$

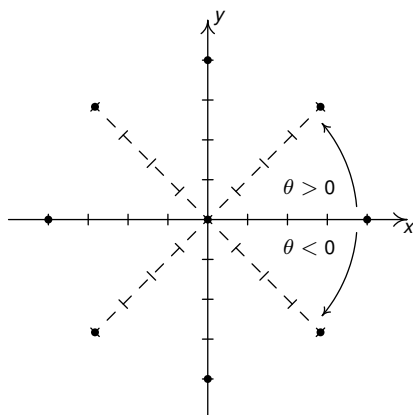
2.  $r = -3\sqrt{2}$

3.  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{4}$

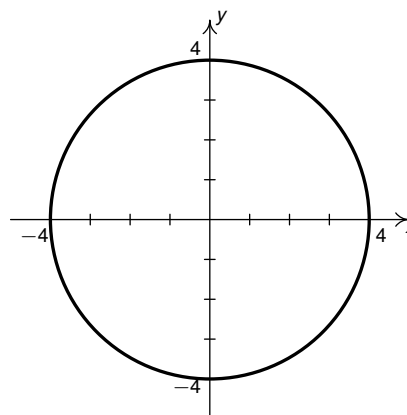
4.  $\theta = -\frac{3\pi}{2}$

**Solution.**

1. In the equation  $r = 4$ ,  $\theta$  is free. The graph of this equation is, therefore, all points which have a polar coordinate representation  $(4, \theta)$ , for any choice of  $\theta$ . In other words, we trace out all of the points 4 units away from the origin. This is exactly the definition of circle, centered at the origin, with a radius of 4.



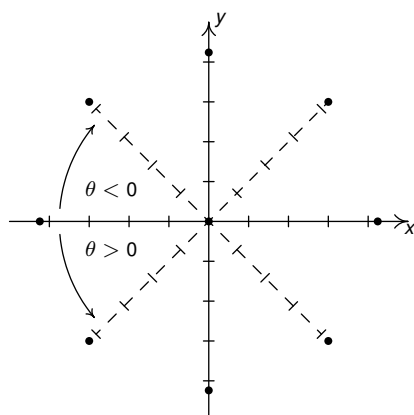
In  $r = 4$ ,  $\theta$  is free



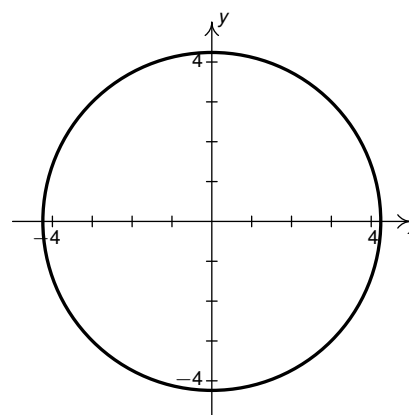
The graph of  $r = 4$

2. Once again we have  $\theta$  being free in the equation  $r = -3\sqrt{2}$ . Plotting all of the points of the form  $(-3\sqrt{2}, \theta)$  gives us a circle of radius  $3\sqrt{2}$  centered at the origin.

<sup>1</sup>See the discussion in Example 1.1.3 number 2a in Section 1.1.

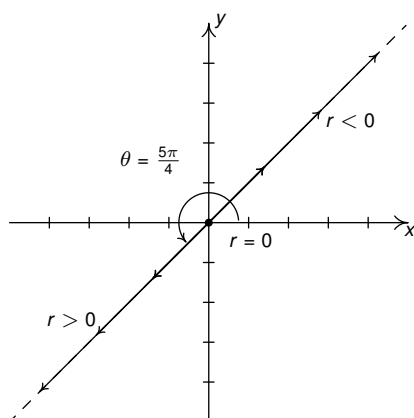


In  $r = -3\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\theta$  is free

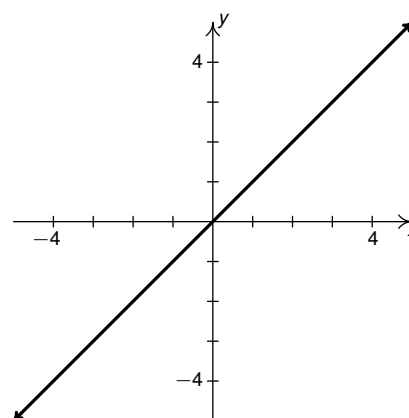


The graph of  $r = -3\sqrt{2}$

3. In the equation  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{4}$ ,  $r$  is free, so we plot all of the points with polar representation  $(r, \frac{5\pi}{4})$ . The result is the line containing the terminal side of  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{4}$ , when plotted in standard position.



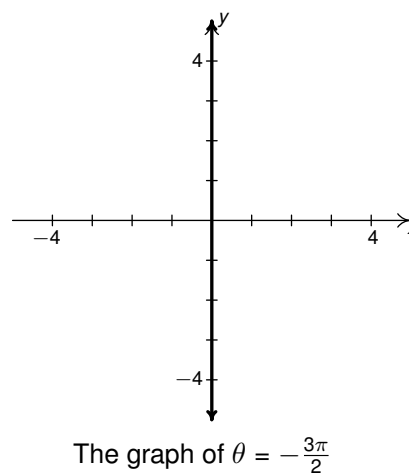
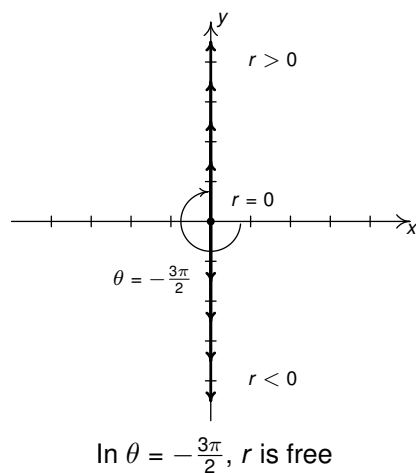
In  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{4}$ ,  $r$  is free



The graph of  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{4}$

4. As in the previous example, the variable  $r$  is free in the equation  $\theta = -\frac{3\pi}{2}$ . Plotting  $(r, -\frac{3\pi}{2})$  for various values of  $r$  shows us that we are tracing out the y-axis.

## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS



□

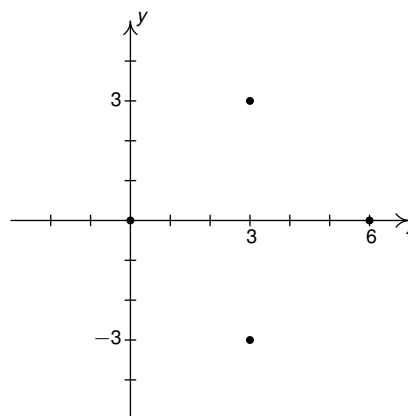
Hopefully, our experience in Example 1.2.1 makes the following result clear.

**Theorem 1.2. Graphs of Constant  $r$  and  $\theta$ :** Suppose  $a$  and  $\alpha$  are constants,  $a \neq 0$ .

- The graph of the polar equation  $r = a$  on the Cartesian plane is a circle centered at the origin of radius  $|a|$ .
- The graph of the polar equation  $\theta = \alpha$  on the Cartesian plane is the line containing the terminal side of  $\alpha$  when plotted in standard position.

Suppose we wish to graph  $r = 6 \cos(\theta)$ . A reasonable way to start is to treat  $\theta$  as the independent variable,  $r$  as the dependent variable, evaluate  $r = f(\theta)$  at some ‘friendly’ values of  $\theta$  and plot the resulting points.<sup>2</sup>

$\theta$	$r = 6 \cos(\theta)$	$(r, \theta)$
0	6	$(6, 0)$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$3\sqrt{2}$	$(3\sqrt{2}, \frac{\pi}{4})$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	0	$(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$
$\frac{3\pi}{4}$	$-3\sqrt{2}$	$(-3\sqrt{2}, \frac{3\pi}{4})$
$\pi$	-6	$(-6, \pi)$
$\frac{5\pi}{4}$	$-3\sqrt{2}$	$(-3\sqrt{2}, \frac{5\pi}{4})$
$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	0	$(0, \frac{3\pi}{2})$
$\frac{7\pi}{4}$	$3\sqrt{2}$	$(3\sqrt{2}, \frac{7\pi}{4})$
$2\pi$	6	$(6, 2\pi)$



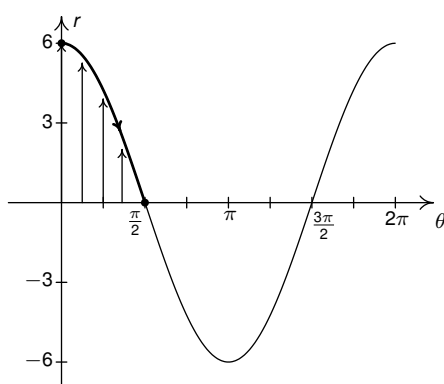
<sup>2</sup>For a review of these concepts and this process, see Section ??.



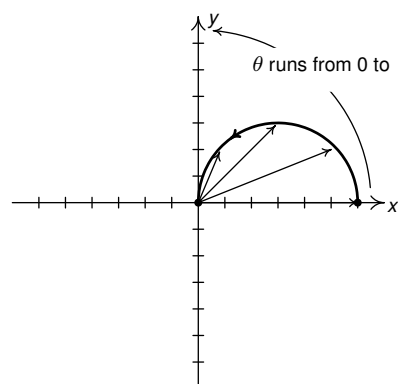
Despite having nine ordered pairs, we get only four distinct points on the graph. For this reason, we employ a slightly different strategy. We graph one cycle of  $r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  on the  $\theta r$ -plane<sup>3</sup> below on the left and use it to help graph the equation on the  $xy$ -plane below on the right.

We see that as  $\theta$  ranges from 0 to  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $r$  ranges from 6 to 0. In the  $xy$ -plane, this means that the curve starts 6 units from the origin on the positive  $x$ -axis ( $\theta = 0$ ) and gradually returns to the origin by the time the curve reaches the  $y$ -axis ( $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ ).

The arrows drawn in the figure below are meant to help you visualize this process. In the  $\theta r$ -plane, the arrows are drawn from the  $\theta$ -axis to the curve  $r = 6 \cos(\theta)$ . In the  $xy$ -plane, each of these arrows starts at the origin and is rotated through the corresponding angle  $\theta$ , in accordance with how we plot polar coordinates. This method is less precise than plotting actual function values, but much faster.

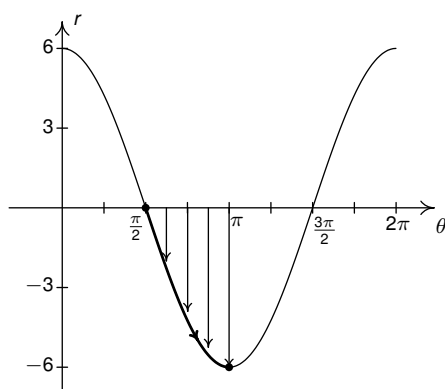


$r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane

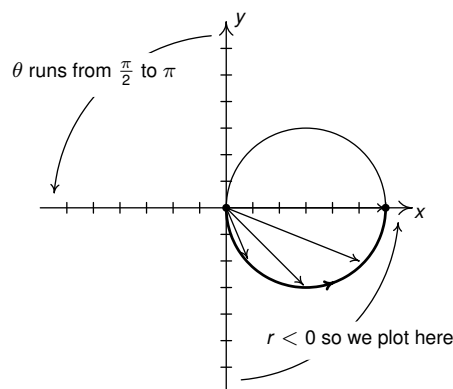


$r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane

Next, we repeat the process as  $\theta$  ranges from  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  to  $\pi$ . Here, the  $r$  values are all negative. This means that in the  $xy$ -plane, instead of graphing in Quadrant II, we graph in Quadrant IV, with all of the angle rotations starting from the negative  $x$ -axis.



$r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane



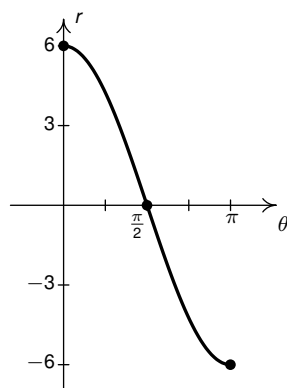
$r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane

<sup>3</sup>The graph looks exactly like  $y = 6 \cos(x)$  in the  $xy$ -plane, and for good reason. At this stage, we are just graphing the relationship between  $r$  and  $\theta$  before we interpret them as polar coordinates  $(r, \theta)$  on the  $xy$ -plane.

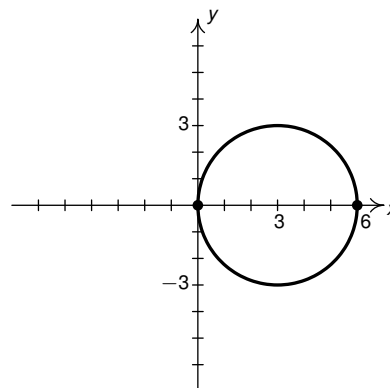
## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

As  $\theta$  ranges from  $\pi$  to  $\frac{3\pi}{2}$ , the  $r$  values are still negative, which means the graph is traced out in Quadrant I instead of Quadrant III. Since the  $|r|$  for these values of  $\theta$  match the  $r$  values for  $\theta$  in  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ , we have that the curve begins to retrace itself at this point.

Proceeding further, we find that when  $\frac{3\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$ , we retrace the portion of the curve in Quadrant IV that we first traced out as  $\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \pi$ . The reader is invited to verify that plotting any range of  $\theta$  outside the interval  $[0, \pi]$  results in retracing some portion of the curve.<sup>4</sup> We present the final graph below.



$r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane



$r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane

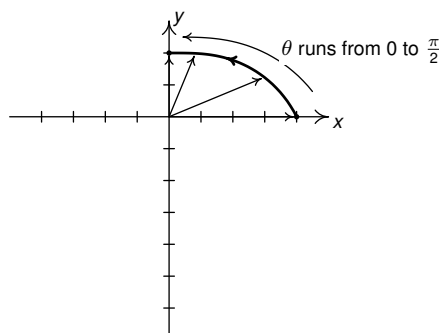
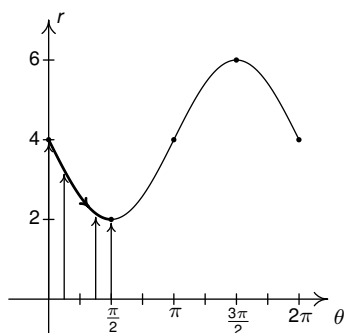
**Example 1.2.2.** Graph the following polar equations in the  $xy$ -plane.

1.  $r = 4 - 2 \sin(\theta)$
2.  $r = 2 + 4 \cos(\theta)$
3.  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$
4.  $r^2 = 16 \cos(2\theta)$

**Solution.**

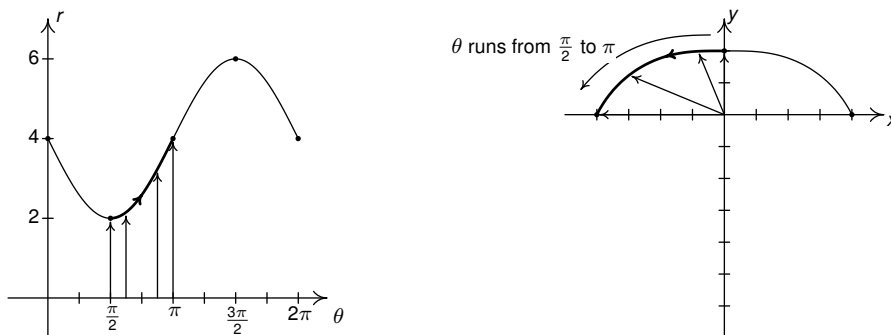
1. We first plot the fundamental cycle of  $r = 4 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  on the  $\theta r$ -axes. To help us visualize what is going on graphically, we divide up  $[0, 2\pi]$  into the usual four subintervals  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ ,  $[\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi]$ ,  $[\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}]$  and  $[\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi]$ , and proceed as we did above.

As  $\theta$  ranges from 0 to  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $r$  decreases from 4 to 2. This means that the curve in the  $xy$ -plane starts 4 units from the origin on the positive  $x$ -axis and gradually pulls in towards the origin as it moves towards the positive  $y$ -axis.

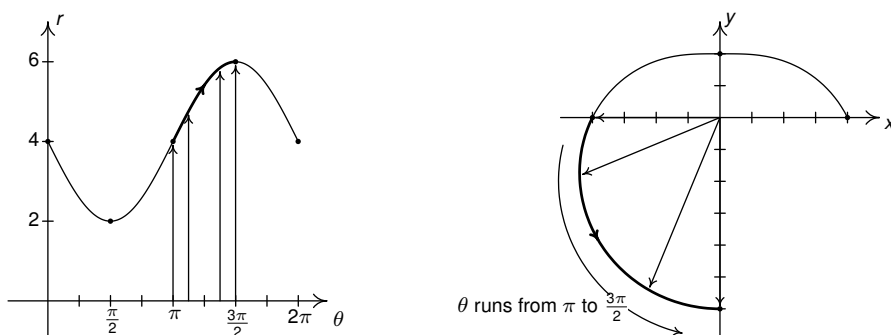


<sup>4</sup>The graph of  $r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  looks suspiciously like a circle, for good reason. See number 1a in Example 1.1.3.

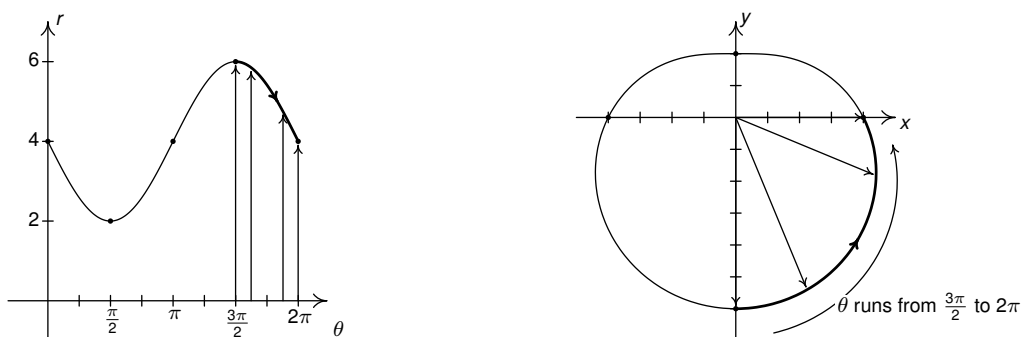
Next, as  $\theta$  runs from  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  to  $\pi$ , we see that  $r$  increases from 2 to 4. Picking up where we left off, we gradually pull the graph away from the origin until we reach the negative x-axis.



Over the interval  $[\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}]$ , we see that  $r$  increases from 4 to 6. On the  $xy$ -plane, the curve sweeps out away from the origin as it travels from the negative x-axis to the negative y-axis.

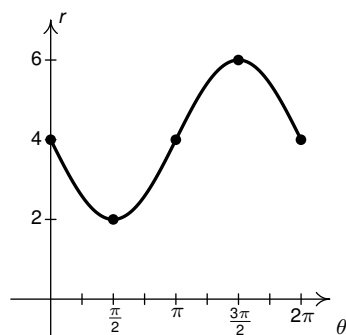


Finally, as  $\theta$  takes on values from  $\frac{3\pi}{2}$  to  $2\pi$ ,  $r$  decreases from 6 back to 4. The graph on the  $xy$ -plane pulls in from the negative y-axis to finish where we started.

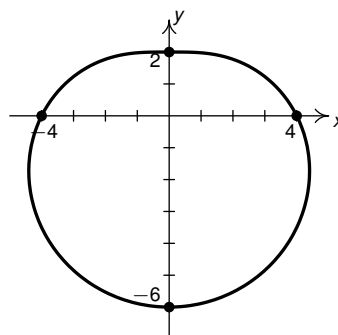


We leave it to the reader to verify that plotting points corresponding to values of  $\theta$  outside the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$  results in retracing portions of the curve, so we are finished.

## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS



$r = 4 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane

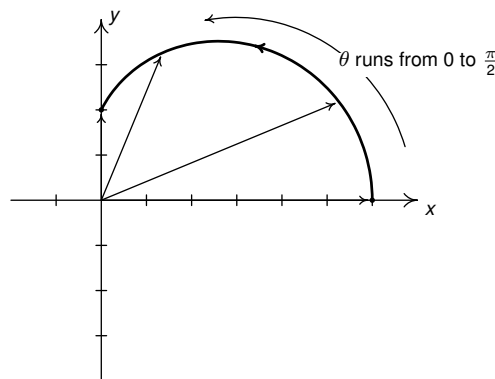
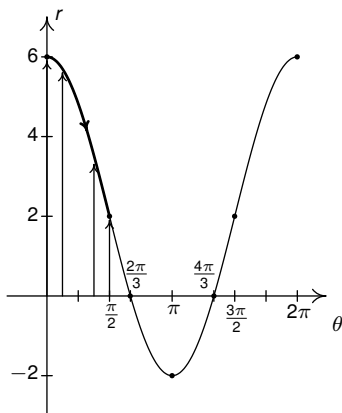


$r = 4 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane.

2. The first thing to note when graphing  $r = 2 + 4 \cos(\theta)$  on the  $\theta r$ -plane over the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$  is that the graph crosses through the  $\theta$ -axis. This corresponds to the graph of the curve passing through the origin in the  $xy$ -plane, so our first task is to determine when this happens.

Setting  $r = 0$  we get  $2 + 4 \cos(\theta) = 0$ , or  $\cos(\theta) = -\frac{1}{2}$ . Solving for  $\theta$  in  $[0, 2\pi]$  gives  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$  and  $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$ . Since these values of  $\theta$  are important geometrically, we break the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$  into six subintervals:  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ ,  $[\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{2\pi}{3}]$ ,  $[\frac{2\pi}{3}, \pi]$ ,  $[\pi, \frac{4\pi}{3}]$ ,  $[\frac{4\pi}{3}, \frac{3\pi}{2}]$  and  $[\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi]$ .

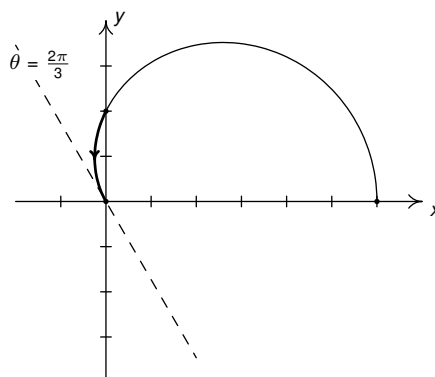
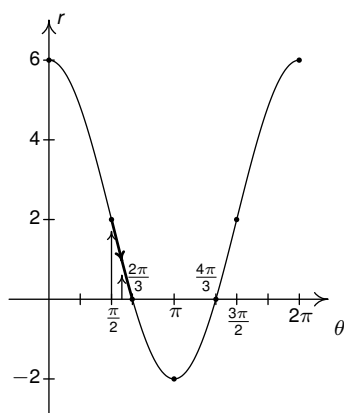
As  $\theta$  ranges from 0 to  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $r$  decreases from 6 to 2. Plotting this on the  $xy$ -plane, we start 6 units out from the origin on the positive  $x$ -axis and slowly pull in towards the positive  $y$ -axis.



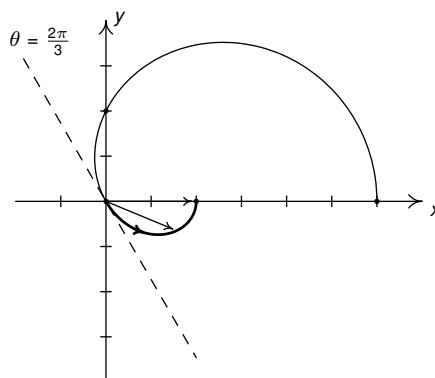
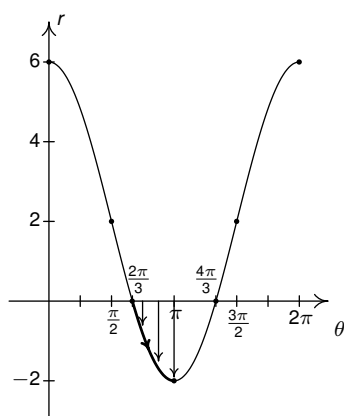
On the interval  $[\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{2\pi}{3}]$ ,  $r$  decreases from 2 to 0, which means the graph is heading into (and will eventually cross through) the origin.

Not only do we reach the origin when  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$ , a theorem from Calculus<sup>5</sup> states that the curve hugs the line  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$  as it approaches the origin.

<sup>5</sup>The 'tangents at the pole' theorem from second semester Calculus.



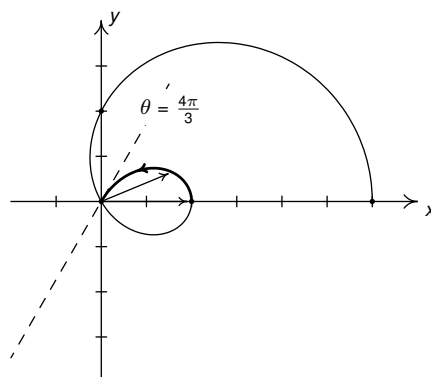
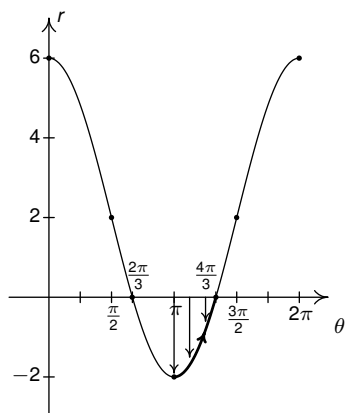
On the interval  $[\frac{2\pi}{3}, \pi]$ ,  $r$  ranges from 0 to  $-2$ . Since  $r \leq 0$ , the curve passes through the origin in the  $xy$ -plane,<sup>6</sup> following the line  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$ . Since  $|r|$  is increasing from 0 to 2, the curve pulls away from the origin and continues upwards through Quadrant IV to finish at a point on the positive  $x$ -axis.



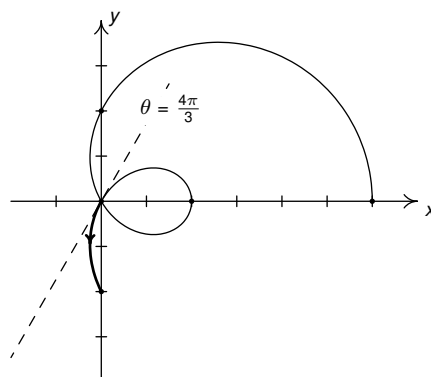
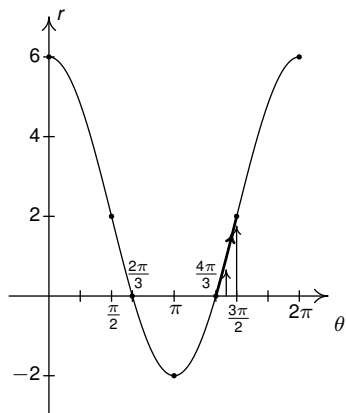
Next, as  $\theta$  progresses from  $\pi$  to  $\frac{4\pi}{3}$ ,  $r$  ranges from  $-2$  to 0. Since  $r \leq 0$ , we continue our graph in the first quadrant, heading into the origin along the line  $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$ .

<sup>6</sup>Recall that one way to visualize plotting polar coordinates  $(r, \theta)$  with  $r < 0$  is to start the rotation from the left side of the pole, in this case, the negative  $x$ -axis. Rotating between  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$  and  $\pi$  radians from the negative  $x$ -axis in this case determines the region between the line  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$  and the  $x$ -axis in Quadrant IV.

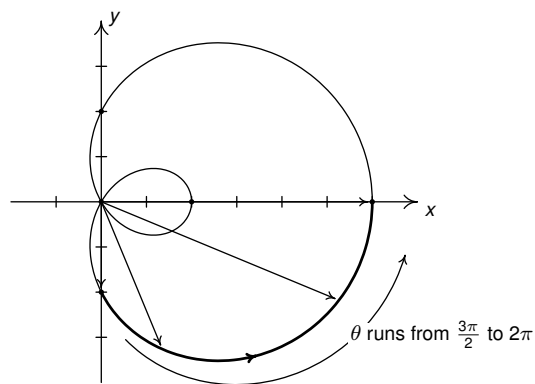
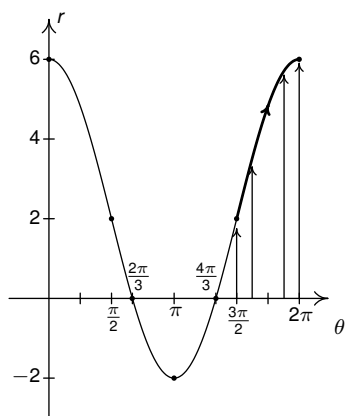
## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS



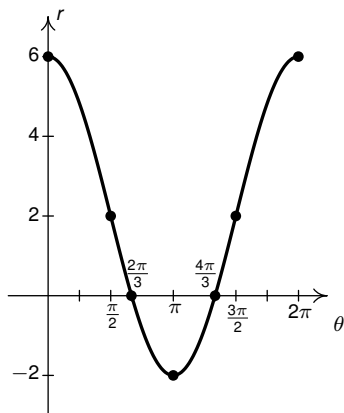
On the interval  $[\frac{4\pi}{3}, \frac{3\pi}{2}]$ ,  $r$  returns to positive values and increases from 0 to 2. We hug the line  $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$  as we move through the origin and head towards the negative  $y$ -axis.



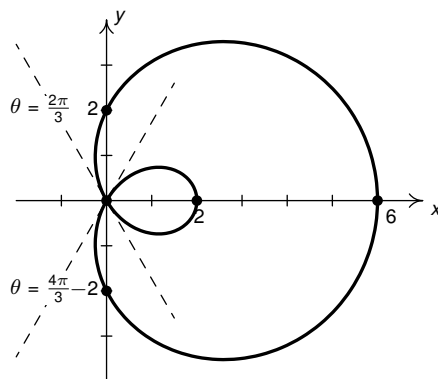
As we round out the interval, we find that as  $\theta$  runs through  $\frac{3\pi}{2}$  to  $2\pi$ ,  $r$  increases from 2 out to 6, and we end up back where we started, 6 units from the origin on the positive  $x$ -axis.



Again, we invite the reader to show that plotting the curve for values of  $\theta$  outside  $[0, 2\pi]$  results in retracing a portion of the curve already traced. Our final graph is below.



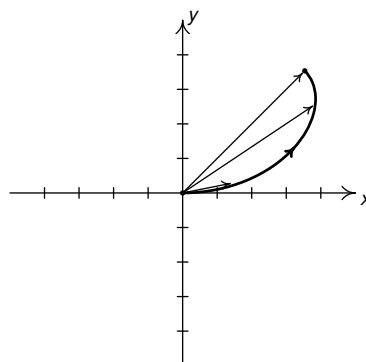
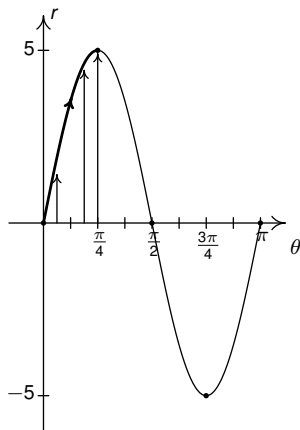
$r = 2 + 4 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane



$r = 2 + 4 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane

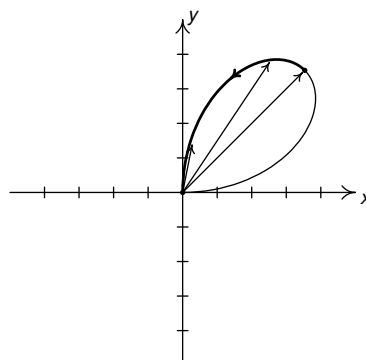
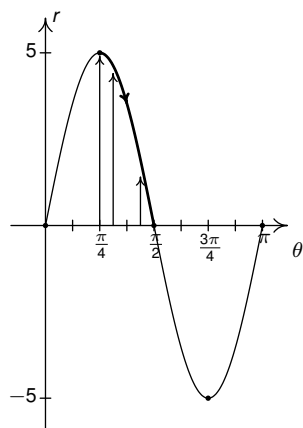
3. As usual, we start by graphing a fundamental cycle of  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane, which in this case, occurs as  $\theta$  ranges from 0 to  $\pi$ . We partition our interval into subintervals to help us with the graphing, namely  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ ,  $[\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ ,  $[\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{4}]$  and  $[\frac{3\pi}{4}, \pi]$ .

As  $\theta$  ranges from 0 to  $\frac{\pi}{4}$ ,  $r$  increases from 0 to 5. Hence the graph of  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane starts at the origin and gradually sweeps out so it is 5 units away from the origin on the line  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

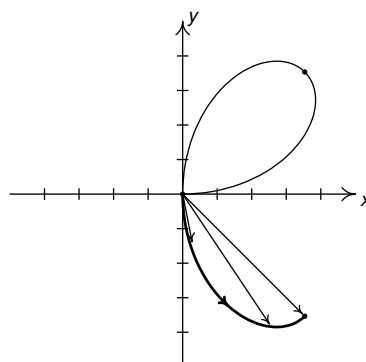
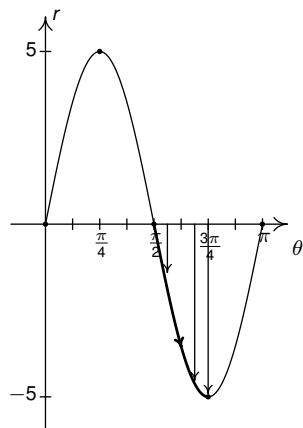


Next, we see that  $r$  decreases from 5 to 0 as  $\theta$  runs through  $[\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . Moreover,  $r$  becomes negative as  $\theta$  crosses  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ . Hence, we draw the curve hugging the line  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$  (the  $y$ -axis) as the curve heads to the origin.

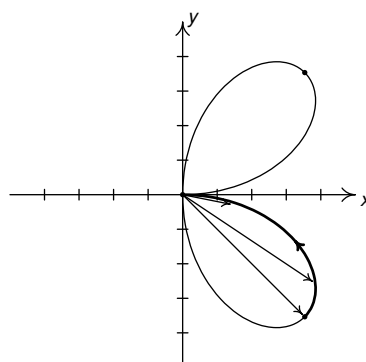
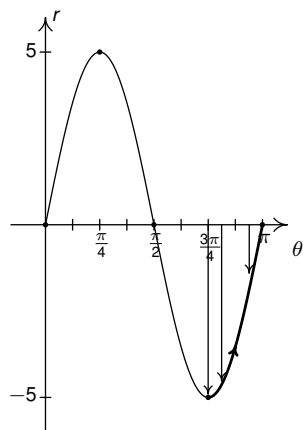
## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS



As  $\theta$  runs from  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  to  $\frac{3\pi}{4}$ ,  $r$  becomes negative and ranges from 0 to  $-5$ . Since  $r \leq 0$ , the curve pulls away from the negative  $y$ -axis into Quadrant IV.



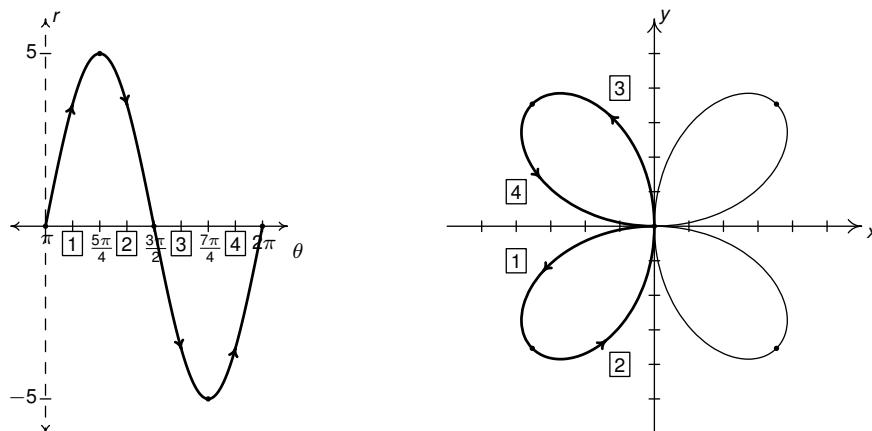
For  $\frac{3\pi}{4} \leq \theta \leq \pi$ ,  $r$  increases from  $-5$  to  $0$ , so the curve pulls back to the origin.



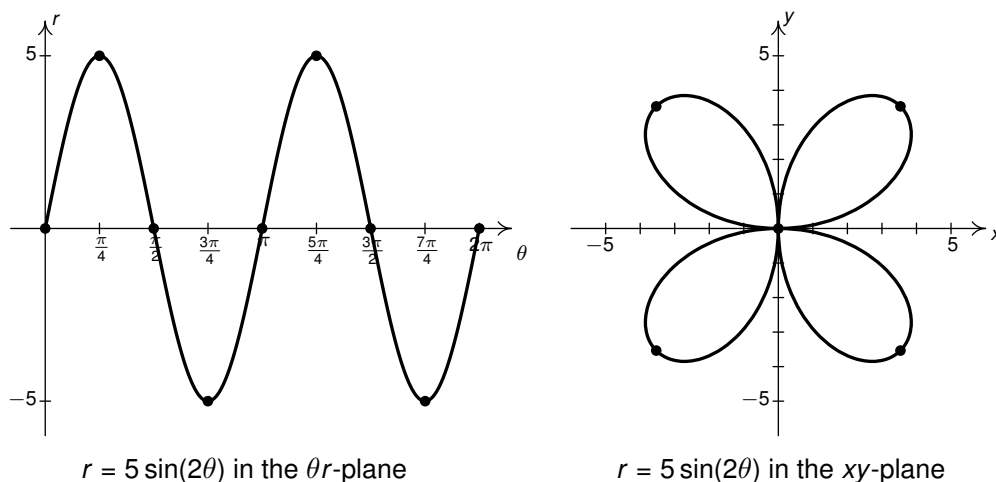


Even though we have finished with one complete cycle of  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$ , if we continue plotting beyond  $\theta = \pi$ , we find to our surprise and delight that the curve continues into the third quadrant!

Below we present a graph of a second cycle of  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  as continued from the first. The boxed labels on the  $\theta$ -axis correspond to the portions with matching labels on the curve in the  $xy$ -plane.



We have the final graph below.



$r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane

$r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane

4. Graphing  $r^2 = 16 \cos(2\theta)$  is complicated by the  $r^2$ , so we solve for  $r$  by extracting square roots and get  $r = \pm \sqrt{16 \cos(2\theta)} = \pm 4 \sqrt{\cos(2\theta)}$ .

How do we sketch such a curve? First off, we sketch a fundamental period of  $r = \cos(2\theta)$  which we have dotted in the figure below. When  $\cos(2\theta) < 0$ ,  $\sqrt{\cos(2\theta)}$  is undefined, so we don't have any values on the interval  $(\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4})$ .

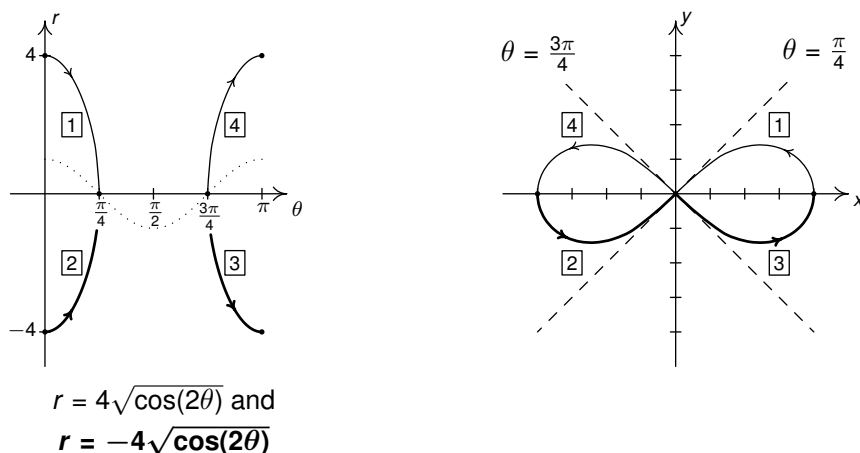
On the intervals which remain,  $\cos(2\theta)$  ranges from 0 to 1, inclusive. Hence,  $\sqrt{\cos(2\theta)}$  ranges from 0 to 1 as well.<sup>7</sup> From this, we know  $r = \pm 4 \sqrt{\cos(2\theta)}$  ranges continuously from 0 to  $\pm 4$ , respectively.

<sup>7</sup>Owing to the relationship between  $y = x$  and  $y = \sqrt{x}$  over  $[0, 1]$ , we know  $\sqrt{\cos(2\theta)} \geq \cos(2\theta)$  wherever the former is defined.

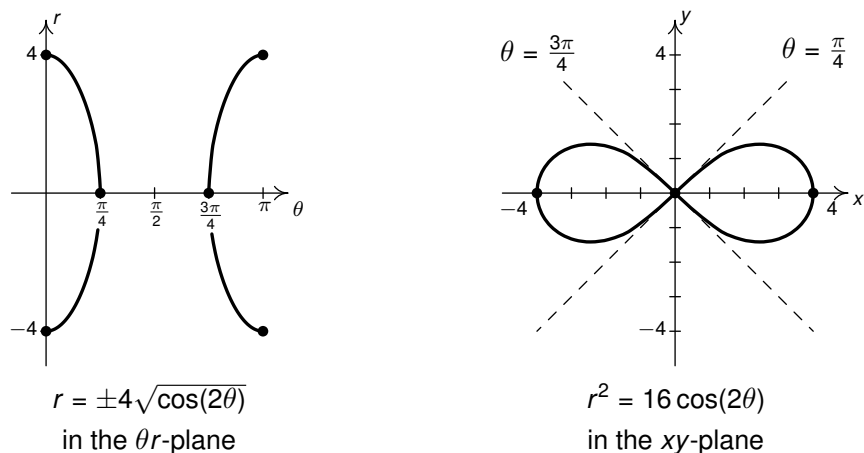
## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

Below we graph both  $r = 4\sqrt{\cos(2\theta)}$  and  $r = -4\sqrt{\cos(2\theta)}$  on the  $\theta r$  plane and use them to sketch the corresponding pieces of the curve  $r^2 = 16 \cos(2\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane.

As we have seen in earlier examples, the lines  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$  and  $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{4}$ , which are the zeros of the functions  $r = \pm 4\sqrt{\cos(2\theta)}$ , serve as guides for us to draw the curve as it passes through the origin.



As we plot points corresponding to values of  $\theta$  outside of the interval  $[0, \pi]$ , we find ourselves retracing parts of the curve,<sup>8</sup> so our final answer is below.



□

A few remarks are in order. First, there is no relation, in general, between the period of the function  $f(\theta)$  and the length of the interval required to sketch the complete graph of  $r = f(\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane.

As we saw on page 26, despite the fact that the period of  $f(\theta) = 6 \cos(\theta)$  is  $2\pi$ , we sketched the complete graph of  $r = 6 \cos(\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane just using the values of  $\theta$  as  $\theta$  ranged from 0 to  $\pi$ .

On the other hand, in Example 1.2.2, number 3, the period of  $f(\theta) = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  is  $\pi$ , but in order to obtain the complete graph of  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$ , we needed to run  $\theta$  from 0 to  $2\pi$ .

<sup>8</sup>In this case, we could have generated the entire graph by using just the plot  $r = 4\sqrt{\cos(2\theta)}$ , but graphed over the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane. We leave the details to the reader.

Second, the symmetry seen in the examples is also a common occurrence when graphing polar equations. In addition symmetry about each axis and the origin, it is possible to talk about *rotational* symmetry with these curves. We leave the exploration of symmetry to Exercises 63 - 65.

Last we note that while many of the ‘common’ polar graphs can be grouped into families,<sup>9</sup> the authors truly feel that taking the time to work through each graph in the manner presented here is the best way to not only understand the polar coordinate system, but also prepare you for what is needed in Calculus.

Next we turn our attention to finding the intersection points of polar curves. What complicates matters in polar coordinates is that any given point has infinitely many representations. As a result, if a point  $P$  is on the graph of two different polar equations, it is entirely possible that the representation  $P(r, \theta)$  which satisfies one of the equations does not satisfy the other equation.

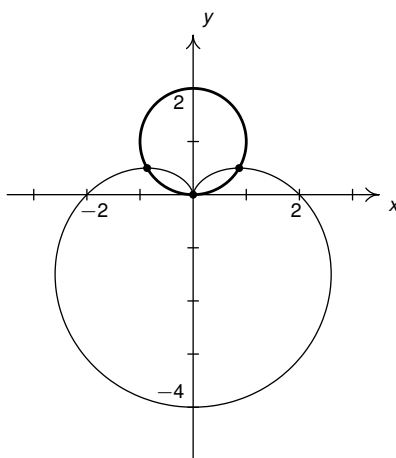
In our next example, we see the need to rely on Geometry as much as Algebra to solve each problem.

**Example 1.2.3.** Find the points of intersection of the graphs of the following polar equations.

1.  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$  and  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$
2.  $r = 2$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$
3.  $r = 3$  and  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$
4.  $r = 3 \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$  and  $r = 3 \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$

**Solution.**

1. Following the procedure in Example 1.2.2, we graph  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$  and find it to be a circle centered at the point with rectangular coordinates  $(0, 1)$  with a radius of 1. The graph of  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  is a special kind of limaçon called a ‘[cardioid](#).’<sup>10</sup>



$$r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta) \text{ and } r = 2 \sin(\theta)$$

<sup>9</sup>Numbers 1 and 2 in Example 1.2.2 are examples of ‘[limaçons](#),’ number 3 is an example of a ‘[polar rose](#),’ and number 4 is the famous ‘[Lemniscate of Bernoulli](#).’

<sup>10</sup>Presumably, the name is derived from its resemblance to a stylized human heart.

## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

It appears as if there are three intersection points: one in the first quadrant, one in the second quadrant, and the origin. Our next task is to find polar representations of these points.

In order for a point  $P$  to be on the graph of  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$ , it must have a representation  $P(r, \theta)$  which satisfies  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$ . If  $P$  is also on the graph of  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$ , then  $P$  has a (possibly different) representation  $P(r', \theta')$  which satisfies  $r' = 2 \sin(\theta')$ . We first try to see if we can find any points which have a single representation  $P(r, \theta)$  that satisfies both  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$  and  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$ .

Assuming such a pair  $(r, \theta)$  exists, then equating<sup>11</sup> the expressions for  $r$  gives  $2 \sin(\theta) = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  or  $\sin(\theta) = \frac{1}{2}$ . From this, we get  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6} + 2\pi k$  or  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{6} + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ .

Plugging  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$  into  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$ , we get  $r = 2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) = 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 1$ , which is also the value we obtain when we substitute it into  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$ . Hence,  $\left(1, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$  is one representation for the point of intersection in the first quadrant.

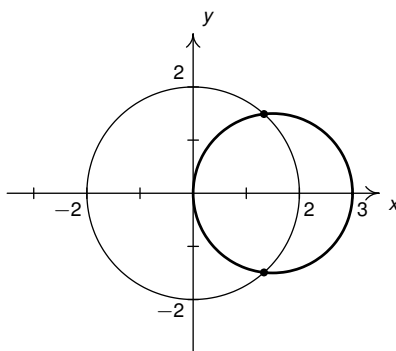
For the point of intersection in the second quadrant, we try  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{6}$ . Both equations give us the point  $\left(1, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$ , so this is our answer here.

We now turn our attention to the origin. We know from Section 1.1 that the pole may be represented as  $(0, \theta)$  for any angle  $\theta$ . On the graph of  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$ , we start at the origin when  $\theta = 0$  and return to it at  $\theta = \pi$ , and as the reader can verify, we are at the origin exactly when  $\theta = \pi k$  for integers  $k$ .

On the curve  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$ , however, we reach the origin when  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ , and more generally, when  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ . There is no integer value of  $k$  for which  $\pi k = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k$  which means while the origin is on both graphs, the point is never reached simultaneously. In any case, we have determined the three points of intersection to be  $\left(1, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ ,  $\left(1, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$  and the origin.

- As before, we make a quick sketch of  $r = 2$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$  to get feel for the number and location of the intersection points. The graph of  $r = 2$  is a circle, centered at the origin, with a radius of 2.

The graph of  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$  is also a circle - but this one is centered at the point with rectangular coordinates  $\left(\frac{3}{2}, 0\right)$  and has a radius of  $\frac{3}{2}$ .



$r = 2$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$

<sup>11</sup>We are really using the technique of substitution to solve the system of equations 
$$\begin{cases} r = 2 \sin(\theta) \\ r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta) \end{cases}$$

We have two intersection points to find, one in Quadrant I and one in Quadrant IV. Proceeding as above, we first determine if any of the intersection points  $P$  have a representation  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfies both  $r = 2$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$ .

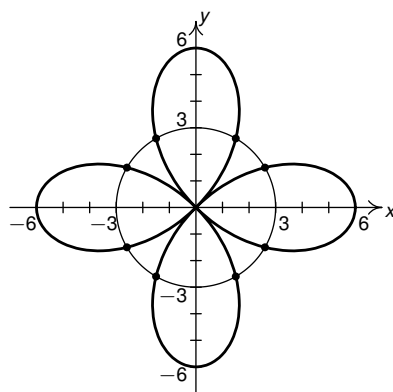
Equating  $r = 2$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$ , we get  $2 = 3 \cos(\theta)$ , or  $\cos(\theta) = \frac{2}{3}$ . To solve this equation, we need the arccosine function:  $\theta = \arccos\left(\frac{2}{3}\right) + 2\pi k$  or  $\theta = 2\pi - \arccos\left(\frac{2}{3}\right) + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ .

From these solutions, we get  $(2, \arccos(\frac{2}{3}))$  as one representation for our answer in Quadrant I, and  $(2, 2\pi - \arccos(\frac{2}{3}))$  as one representation for our answer in Quadrant IV.

The reader is encouraged to check these results algebraically and geometrically.

3. Proceeding as above, we first graph  $r = 3$  and  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  to get an idea of how many intersection points to expect and where they lie.

The graph of  $r = 3$  is a circle centered at the origin with a radius of 3 and the graph of  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  is another four-leaved rose.<sup>12</sup>



$r = 3$  and  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$

It appears as if there are eight points of intersection - two in each quadrant. We first look to see if there any points  $P(r, \theta)$  with a representation that satisfies both  $r = 3$  and  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$ .

Solving  $6 \cos(2\theta) = 3$ , we get  $\cos(2\theta) = \frac{1}{2}$ , so  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6} + \pi k$  or  $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{6} + \pi k$  for integers  $k$ . From these, we obtain four distinct points represented by  $(3, \frac{\pi}{6})$ ,  $(3, \frac{5\pi}{6})$ ,  $(3, \frac{7\pi}{6})$  and  $(3, \frac{11\pi}{6})$ .

To determine the coordinates of the remaining four points, we have to consider how the representations of the points of intersection can differ. We know from Section 1.1 that if  $(r, \theta)$  and  $(r', \theta')$  represent the same point and  $r \neq 0$ , then either  $r = r'$  or  $r = -r'$ .

If  $r = r'$ , then  $\theta' = \theta + 2\pi k$ , so one possibility is that an intersection point  $P$  has a representation  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfies  $r = 3$  and another representation  $(r, \theta + 2\pi k)$  for some integer,  $k$  which satisfies

<sup>12</sup>See Example 1.2.2 number 3.

## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

$r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$ . At this point,<sup>13</sup> we replace every occurrence of  $\theta$  in the equation  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  with  $(\theta + 2\pi k)$  to see if, by equating the resulting expressions for  $r$ , we get any more solutions for  $\theta$ .

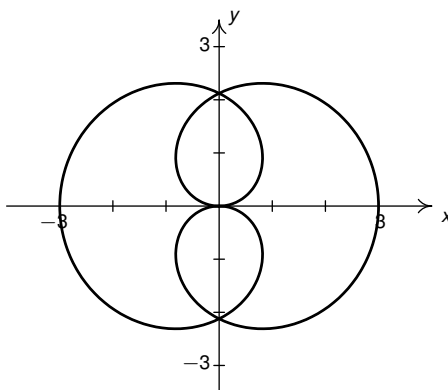
Doing so, we get  $\cos(2(\theta + 2\pi k)) = \cos(2\theta + 4\pi k) = \cos(2\theta)$  for every integer  $k$ . Hence, the equation  $r = 6 \cos(2(\theta + 2\pi k))$  reduces to the same equation we had before,  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$ , which means we get no additional solutions.

Moving on to the case where  $r = -r'$ , we have that  $\theta' = \theta + (2k + 1)\pi$  for integers  $k$ . We look to see if we can find points  $P$  which have a representation  $(r, \theta)$  that satisfies  $r = 3$  and another,  $(-r, \theta + (2k + 1)\pi)$ , that satisfies  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$ .

Substituting<sup>14</sup>  $(-r)$  for  $r$  and  $(\theta + (2k + 1)\pi)$  for  $\theta$  in  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  gives  $-r = 6 \cos(2(\theta + (2k + 1)\pi))$ . Since  $\cos(2(\theta + (2k + 1)\pi)) = \cos(2\theta + (2k + 1)(2\pi)) = \cos(2\theta)$  for all integers  $k$ , the equation  $-r = 6 \cos(2(\theta + (2k + 1)\pi))$  reduces to  $-r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$ , or  $r = -6 \cos(2\theta)$ .

Coupling  $r = -6 \cos(2\theta)$  with  $r = 3$  gives  $-6 \cos(2\theta) = 3$  or  $\cos(2\theta) = -\frac{1}{2}$ . Solving, we get  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3} + \pi k$  or  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3} + \pi k$ . From these solutions, we obtain<sup>15</sup> the remaining four intersection points with representations  $(-3, \frac{\pi}{3})$ ,  $(-3, \frac{2\pi}{3})$ ,  $(-3, \frac{4\pi}{3})$  and  $(-3, \frac{5\pi}{3})$ , which check graphically.

4. As usual, we begin by graphing  $r = 3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2})$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$ . Using the techniques presented in Example 1.2.2, we plot both functions as  $\theta$  ranges from 0 to  $4\pi$  to obtain the complete graph. To our surprise and/or delight, it appears as if these two equations describe the *same* curve!



$r = 3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2})$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$   
appear to determine the same curve in the  $xy$ -plane

<sup>13</sup>The authors have chosen to replace  $\theta$  with  $\theta + 2\pi k$  in the equation  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  for illustration purposes only. We could have just as easily chosen to do this substitution in the equation  $r = 3$ . Since there is no  $\theta$  in  $r = 3$ , however, this case would reduce to the previous case instantly. The reader is encouraged to follow this latter procedure in the interests of efficiency.

<sup>14</sup>Again, we could have easily chosen to substitute these into  $r = 3$  which would give  $-r = 3$ , or  $r = -3$ .

<sup>15</sup>We obtain these representations by substituting the values for  $\theta$  into  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$ , once again, for illustration purposes. Again, we could 'plug' these values for  $\theta$  into  $r = 3$  (where there is no  $\theta$ ) and get the list of points:  $(3, \frac{\pi}{3})$ ,  $(3, \frac{2\pi}{3})$ ,  $(3, \frac{4\pi}{3})$  and  $(3, \frac{5\pi}{3})$ . While it is not true that  $(3, \frac{\pi}{3})$  represents the same point as  $(-3, \frac{\pi}{3})$ , we still get the same *set* of solutions.

To verify this incredible claim,<sup>16</sup> we need to show that, in fact, the graphs of these two equations intersect at all points on the plane.

Suppose  $P$  has a representation  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfies both  $r = 3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2})$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$ . Equating these two expressions for  $r$  gives the equation  $3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2}) = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$ . While normally we discourage dividing by a variable expression (in case it could be 0), we use the same logic here as we did in the solution to Example 1.1.3 number 1c in Section 1.1.

If  $3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2}) = 0$ , then  $\cos(\frac{\theta}{2}) = 0$  and for the equation  $3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2}) = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$  to hold,  $\sin(\frac{\theta}{2}) = 0$  as well. Since no angles have both cosine and sine equal to zero, we are safe to divide both sides of the equation  $3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2}) = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$  by  $3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$  to get  $\tan(\frac{\theta}{2}) = 1$ . Solving this equation gives  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$  which corresponds to just *one* intersection point:  $(\frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ . We now investigate other representations for the intersection points.

Suppose  $P$  is an intersection point with a representation  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfies  $r = 3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2})$  and a different representation  $(r, \theta + 2\pi k)$  for some integer  $k$  which satisfies  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$ .

Substituting  $(r, \theta + 2\pi k)$  into  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$ , we get  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{1}{2}[\theta + 2\pi k]) = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2} + \pi k)$ . Using the sum formula for cosine, we expand  $3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2} + \pi k) = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2}) \cos(\pi k) - 3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2}) \sin(\pi k)$ . Since  $\sin(\pi k) = 0$  for all integers  $k$ ,  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2} + \pi k)$  reduces to  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2}) \cos(\pi k)$ .

If  $k$  is an even integer,  $\cos(\pi k) = 1$ , so we get the same equation  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$  as before, and hence any new solutions come from the case when  $k$  is odd.

If  $k$  is odd,  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2}) \cos(\pi k)$  reduces to  $r = -3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$ . Coupling  $r = -3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$  with the equation  $r = 3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2})$  gives  $3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2}) = -3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$ , or  $\tan(\frac{\theta}{2}) = -1$ . Solving, we get  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ , which again produces just one intersection point:  $(\frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\frac{\pi}{2})$ .

Next, we assume  $P$  has a representation  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfies  $r = 3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2})$  and a representation  $(-r, \theta + (2k + 1)\pi)$  which satisfies  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$  for some integer  $k$ .

Substituting  $(-r)$  for  $r$  and  $(\theta + (2k + 1)\pi)$  in for  $\theta$  into  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$  gives  $-r = 3 \cos(\frac{1}{2}[\theta + (2k + 1)\pi])$  or  $r = -3 \cos(\frac{1}{2}[\theta + (2k + 1)\pi])$ . Once again, we use the sum formula for cosine to get

$$\begin{aligned} r &= -3 \cos\left(\frac{1}{2}[\theta + (2k + 1)\pi]\right) \\ &= -3 \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2} + \frac{(2k+1)\pi}{2}\right) \\ &= -3 \left[ \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{(2k+1)\pi}{2}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \sin\left(\frac{(2k+1)\pi}{2}\right) \right] \\ &= 3 \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \sin\left(\frac{(2k+1)\pi}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

where the last equality is true since  $\cos\left(\frac{(2k+1)\pi}{2}\right) = 0$ .

<sup>16</sup>Graphing  $r = 3 \sin(\frac{\theta}{2})$  and  $r = 3 \cos(\frac{\theta}{2})$  in the  $\theta r$ -plane show that viewed as functions of  $r$ , these are two different animals.

## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

Note when  $k = 0$ ,  $\sin\left(\frac{(2k+1)\pi}{2}\right) = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1$ , and the equation  $r = -3 \cos\left(\frac{1}{2}[\theta + (2k+1)\pi]\right)$  reduces to  $r = 3 \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$ , which is the other equation under consideration!

What this means is that if a polar representation  $(r, \theta)$  for the point  $P$  satisfies  $r = 3 \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$ , then the representation  $(-r, \theta + \pi)$  for  $P$  automatically satisfies  $r = 3 \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$ . Hence the equations  $r = 3 \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$  and  $r = 3 \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$  determine the same set of points in the plane.  $\square$

Our work in Example 1.2.3 justifies the following.

### Guidelines for Finding Points of Intersection of Graphs of Polar Equations:

To find the points of intersection of the graphs of two polar equations  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ :

- Sketch the graphs of  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ . Check to see if the curves intersect at the origin (pole).
- Solve for pairs  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfy both  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ .
- Substitute  $(\theta + 2\pi k)$  for  $\theta$  in either one of  $E_1$  or  $E_2$  (but not both) and solve for pairs  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfy both equations. Keep in mind that  $k$  is an integer.
- Substitute  $(-r)$  for  $r$  and  $(\theta + (2k+1)\pi)$  for  $\theta$  in either one of  $E_1$  or  $E_2$  (but not both) and solve for pairs  $(r, \theta)$  which satisfy both equations. Keep in mind that  $k$  is an integer.

Our last example ties together graphing and points of intersection to describe regions in the plane.

**Example 1.2.4.** Sketch the region in the  $xy$ -plane described by the following sets.

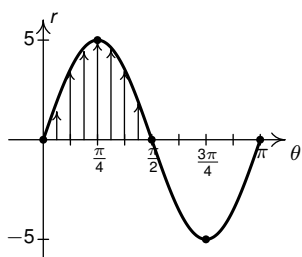
1.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 5 \sin(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$
2.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 3 \leq r \leq 6 \cos(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{6}\}$
3.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 2 + 4 \cos(\theta) \leq r \leq 0, \frac{2\pi}{3} \leq \theta \leq \frac{4\pi}{3}\}$
4.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \sin(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{6}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 - 2 \sin(\theta), \frac{\pi}{6} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$

**Solution.** Our first step in these problems is to sketch the graphs of the polar equations involved to get a sense of the geometric situation. Since all of the equations in this example are found in either Example 1.2.2 or Example 1.2.3, most of the work is done for us.

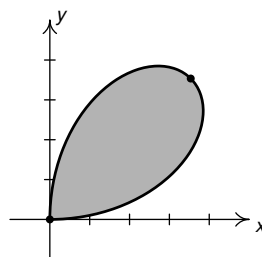
1. We know from Example 1.2.2 number 3 that the graph of  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  is a rose. Moreover, we know as  $0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , we trace out the 'leaf' of the rose which lies in the first quadrant.

The inequality  $0 \leq r \leq 5 \sin(2\theta)$  means we want all of the points between the origin ( $r = 0$ ) and the curve  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  as  $\theta$  runs through  $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . Hence, the region we seek is the leaf itself.





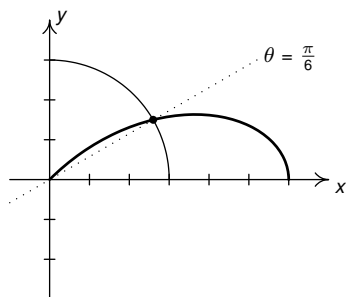
$$r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$$



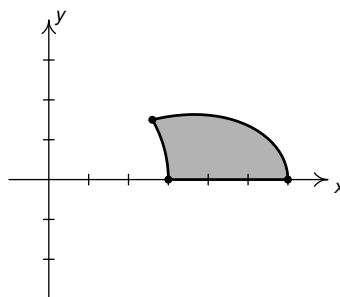
$$\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 5 \sin(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$$

2. We know from Example 1.2.3 number 3 that  $r = 3$  and  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  intersect at  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$ , so the region that is being described here is the set of points whose directed distance  $r$  from the origin is at least 3 but no more than  $6 \cos(2\theta)$  as  $\theta$  runs from 0 to  $\frac{\pi}{6}$ .

In other words, we are looking at the points outside or on the circle (since  $r \geq 3$ ) but inside or on the rose (since  $r \leq 6 \cos(2\theta)$ ). We shade the region below.



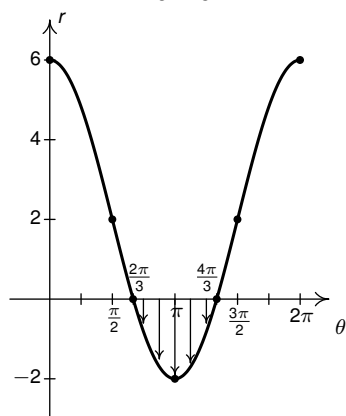
$$r = 3 \text{ and } r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$$



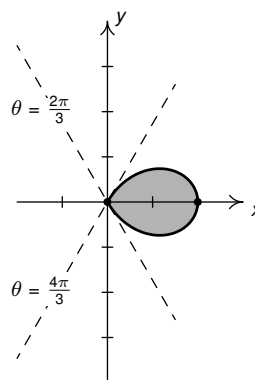
$$\{(r, \theta) \mid 3 \leq r \leq 6 \cos(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{6}\}$$

3. From Example 1.2.2 number 2, we know that the graph of  $r = 2 + 4 \cos(\theta)$  is a limaçon whose 'inner loop' is traced out as  $\theta$  runs through the given values  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$  to  $\frac{4\pi}{3}$ .

Since the values  $r$  takes on in this interval are non-positive, the inequality  $2 + 4 \cos(\theta) \leq r \leq 0$  makes sense, and we are looking for all of the points between the pole  $r = 0$  and the limaçon as  $\theta$  ranges over the interval  $[\frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{4\pi}{3}]$ . In other words, we shade in the inner loop of the limaçon.



$$r = 2 + 4 \cos(\theta)$$



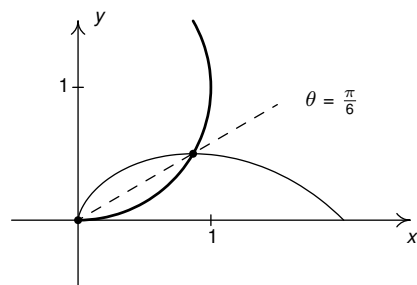
$$\{(r, \theta) \mid 2 + 4 \cos(\theta) \leq r \leq 0, \frac{2\pi}{3} \leq \theta \leq \frac{4\pi}{3}\}$$

4. We have two regions described here connected with the union symbol '∪.' We shade each in turn and find our final answer by combining the two.

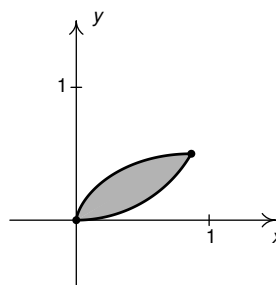
In Example 1.2.3, number 1, we found that the curves  $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$  and  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  intersect when  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$ . Hence, for the first region,  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \sin(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{6}\}$ , we are shading the region between the origin ( $r = 0$ ) out to the circle ( $r = 2 \sin(\theta)$ ) as  $\theta$  ranges from 0 to  $\frac{\pi}{6}$ , which is the angle of intersection of the two curves.

For the second region,  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 - 2 \sin(\theta), \frac{\pi}{6} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$ ,  $\theta$  picks up where it left off at  $\frac{\pi}{6}$  and continues to  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ . In this case, however, we are shading from the origin ( $r = 0$ ) out to the cardioid  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  which pulls into the origin at  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

We combine these two regions to obtain our final answer.



$$r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta) \text{ and } r = 2 \sin(\theta)$$



$$\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \sin(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{6}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 - 2 \sin(\theta), \frac{\pi}{6} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$$

□

### 1.2.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1 - 20, plot the graph of the polar equation by hand. Carefully label your graphs.

1. Circle:  $r = 6 \sin(\theta)$
2. Circle:  $r = 2 \cos(\theta)$
3. Rose:  $r = 2 \sin(2\theta)$
4. Rose:  $r = 4 \cos(2\theta)$
5. Rose:  $r = 5 \sin(3\theta)$
6. Rose:  $r = \cos(5\theta)$
7. Rose:  $r = \sin(4\theta)$
8. Rose:  $r = 3 \cos(4\theta)$
9. Cardioid:  $r = 3 - 3 \cos(\theta)$
10. Cardioid:  $r = 5 + 5 \sin(\theta)$
11. Cardioid:  $r = 2 + 2 \cos(\theta)$
12. Cardioid:  $r = 1 - \sin(\theta)$
13. Limaçon:  $r = 1 - 2 \cos(\theta)$
14. Limaçon:  $r = 1 - 2 \sin(\theta)$
15. Limaçon:  $r = 2\sqrt{3} + 4 \cos(\theta)$
16. Limaçon:  $r = 3 - 5 \cos(\theta)$
17. Limaçon:  $r = 3 - 5 \sin(\theta)$
18. Limaçon:  $r = 2 + 7 \sin(\theta)$
19. Lemniscate:  $r^2 = \sin(2\theta)$
20. Lemniscate:  $r^2 = 4 \cos(2\theta)$

In Exercises 21 - 30, find the exact polar coordinates of the points of intersection of graphs of the polar equations. Remember to check for intersection at the pole (origin).

21.  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$  and  $r = 1 + \cos(\theta)$
22.  $r = 1 + \sin(\theta)$  and  $r = 1 - \cos(\theta)$
23.  $r = 1 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  and  $r = 2$
24.  $r = 1 - 2 \cos(\theta)$  and  $r = 1$
25.  $r = 2 \cos(\theta)$  and  $r = 2\sqrt{3} \sin(\theta)$
26.  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$  and  $r = \sin(\theta)$
27.  $r^2 = 4 \cos(2\theta)$  and  $r = \sqrt{2}$
28.  $r^2 = 2 \sin(2\theta)$  and  $r = 1$
29.  $r = 4 \cos(2\theta)$  and  $r = 2$
30.  $r = 2 \sin(2\theta)$  and  $r = 1$

In Exercises 31 - 40, sketch the region in the  $xy$ -plane described by the given set.

31.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3, 0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi\}$
32.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 4 \sin(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi\}$
33.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3 \cos(\theta), -\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$
34.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \sin(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$

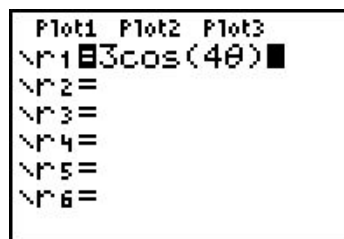
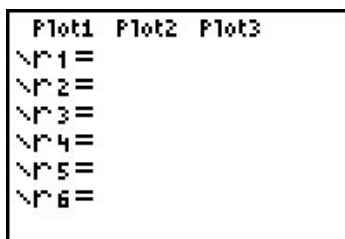
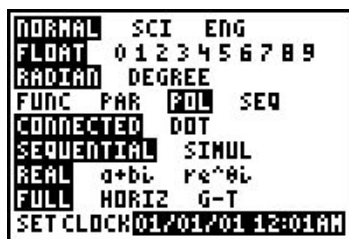
## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

35.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 4 \cos(2\theta), -\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{4}\}$       36.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 1 \leq r \leq 1 - 2 \cos(\theta), \frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}\}$
37.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 1 + \cos(\theta) \leq r \leq 3 \cos(\theta), -\frac{\pi}{3} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{3}\}$
38.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 1 \leq r \leq \sqrt{2 \sin(2\theta)}, \frac{13\pi}{12} \leq \theta \leq \frac{17\pi}{12}\}$
39.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2\sqrt{3} \sin(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{6}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \cos(\theta), \frac{\pi}{6} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$
40.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \sin(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{12}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 1, \frac{\pi}{12} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{4}\}$

In Exercises 41 - 50, use set-builder notation to describe the polar region. Assume that the region contains its bounding curves.

41. The region inside the circle  $r = 5$ .
42. The region inside the circle  $r = 5$  which lies in Quadrant III.
43. The region inside the left half of the circle  $r = 6 \sin(\theta)$ .
44. The region inside the circle  $r = 4 \cos(\theta)$  which lies in Quadrant IV.
45. The region inside the top half of the cardioid  $r = 3 - 3 \cos(\theta)$
46. The region inside the cardioid  $r = 2 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  which lies in Quadrants I and IV.
47. The inside of the petal of the rose  $r = 3 \cos(4\theta)$  which lies on the positive x-axis
48. The region inside the circle  $r = 5$  but outside the circle  $r = 3$ .
49. The region which lies inside of the circle  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$  but outside of the circle  $r = \sin(\theta)$
50. The region in Quadrant I which lies inside both the circle  $r = 3$  as well as the rose  $r = 6 \sin(2\theta)$

While the authors truly believe that graphing polar curves by hand is fundamental to your understanding of the polar coordinate system, we would be derelict in our duties if we totally ignored the graphing utility.<sup>17</sup> Indeed, there are some important polar curves which are simply too difficult to graph by hand and that makes the calculator an important tool for your further studies in Mathematics, Science and Engineering. We now give a brief demonstration of how to use the graphing utility to plot polar curves. The first thing you must do is switch the MODE of your calculator to POL, which stands for “polar”.



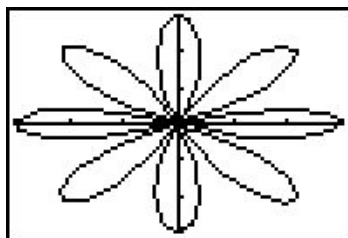
<sup>17</sup>As of this writing, while free online websites and apps like [desmos](https://www.desmos.com) are gaining popularity, the TI-83/84 series calculators are still in wide circulation.

This changes the “Y=” menu as seen above in the middle. Let’s plot the polar rose given by  $r = 3 \cos(4\theta)$  from Exercise 8 above. We type the function into the “r=” menu as seen above on the right. We need to set the viewing window so that the curve displays properly, but when we look at the WINDOW menu, we find three extra lines.

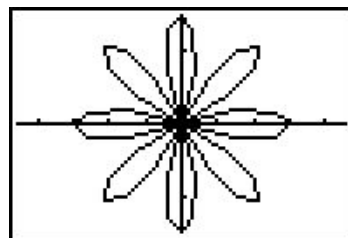
```
WINDOW
θmin=0
θmax=6.2831853...
θstep=.1308996...
Xmin=-3
Xmax=3
Xscl=1
Ymin=0
```

```
WINDOW
↑θstep=.1308996...
Xmin=-3
Xmax=3
Xscl=1
Ymin=-3
Ymax=3
Yscl=2
```

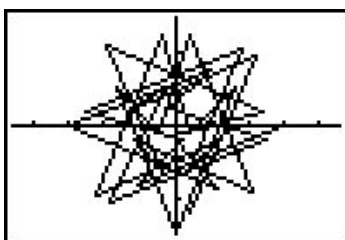
In order for the calculator to be able to plot  $r = 3 \cos(4\theta)$  in the  $xy$ -plane, we need to tell it not only the dimensions which  $x$  and  $y$  will assume, but we also what values of  $\theta$  to use. From our previous work, we know that we need  $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$ , so we enter the data you see above. (I’ll say more about the  $\theta$ -step in just a moment.) Hitting GRAPH yields the curve below on the left which doesn’t look quite right. The issue here is that the calculator screen is 96 pixels wide but only 64 pixels tall. To get a true geometric perspective, we need to hit ZOOM SQUARE (seen below in the middle) to produce a more accurate graph which we present below on the right.



```
ZOOM MEMORY
1:ZBox
2:Zoom In
3:Zoom Out
4:ZDecimal
5:ZSquare
6:ZStandard
7↓ZTrig
```



In function mode, the calculator automatically divided the interval  $[Xmin, Xmax]$  into 96 equal subintervals. In polar mode, however, we must specify how to split up the interval  $[\theta min, \theta max]$  using the  $\theta$ step. For most graphs, a  $\theta$ step of 0.1 is fine. If you make it too small then the calculator takes a long time to graph. If you make it too big, you get chunky garbage like this.



You will need to experiment with the settings in order to get a nice graph. Exercises 51 - 60 give you some curves to graph using your calculator. Note some of them have explicit bounds on  $\theta$  and others do not.

## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

51.  $r = \theta, 0 \leq \theta \leq 12\pi$

52.  $r = \ln(\theta), 1 \leq \theta \leq 12\pi$

53.  $r = e^{1\theta}, 0 \leq \theta \leq 12\pi$

54.  $r = \theta^3 - \theta, -1.2 \leq \theta \leq 1.2$

55.  $r = \sin(5\theta) - 3\cos(\theta)$

56.  $r = \sin^3\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) + \cos^2\left(\frac{\theta}{3}\right)$

57.  $r = \arctan(\theta), -\pi \leq \theta \leq \pi$

58.  $r = \frac{1}{1 - \cos(\theta)}$

59.  $r = \frac{1}{2 - \cos(\theta)}$

60.  $r = \frac{1}{2 - 3\cos(\theta)}$

61. Use a graphing utility to graph  $r = a - b\sin(\theta)$  for various (positive) values of  $a$  and  $b$ . Describe the shape of the curve when  $a = b$ ,  $a < b$ , and when  $a > b$ .

62. How many petals does the polar rose  $r = \sin(2\theta)$  have? What about  $r = \sin(3\theta)$ ,  $r = \sin(4\theta)$  and  $r = \sin(5\theta)$ ? With the help of your classmates, make a conjecture as to how many petals the polar rose  $r = \sin(n\theta)$  has for any natural number  $n$ . Replace sine with cosine and repeat the investigation. How many petals does  $r = \cos(n\theta)$  have for each natural number  $n$ ?

Looking back through the graphs in the section, it's clear that many polar curves enjoy various forms of symmetry. However, classifying symmetry for polar curves is not as straight-forward as it was for equations back in Section ???. In Exercises 63 - 65, we have you and your classmates explore some of the more basic forms of symmetry seen in common polar curves.

63. Show that if  $f$  is even<sup>18</sup> then the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$  is symmetric about the  $x$ -axis.

(a) Show that  $f(\theta) = 2 + 4\cos(\theta)$  is even and verify that the graph of  $r = 2 + 4\cos(\theta)$  is indeed symmetric about the  $x$ -axis. (See Example 1.2.2 number 2.)

(b) Show that  $f(\theta) = 3\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$  is **not** even, yet the graph of  $r = 3\sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$  **is** symmetric about the  $x$ -axis. (See Example 1.2.3 number 4.)

64. Show that if  $f$  is odd<sup>19</sup> then the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$  is symmetric about the origin.

(a) Show that  $f(\theta) = 5\sin(2\theta)$  is odd and verify that the graph of  $r = 5\sin(2\theta)$  is indeed symmetric about the origin. (See Example 1.2.2 number 3.)

(b) Show that  $f(\theta) = 3\cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$  is **not** odd, yet the graph of  $r = 3\cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$  **is** symmetric about the origin. (See Example 1.2.3 number 4.)

<sup>18</sup>Recall that this means  $f(-\theta) = f(\theta)$  for  $\theta$  in the domain of  $f$ .

<sup>19</sup>Recall that this means  $f(-\theta) = -f(\theta)$  for  $\theta$  in the domain of  $f$ .

65. Show that if  $f(\pi - \theta) = f(\theta)$  for all  $\theta$  in the domain of  $f$  then the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$  is symmetric about the  $y$ -axis.

- (a) For  $f(\theta) = 4 - 2 \sin(\theta)$ , show that  $f(\pi - \theta) = f(\theta)$  and the graph of  $r = 4 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  is symmetric about the  $y$ -axis, as required. (See Example 1.2.2 number 1.)
- (b) For  $f(\theta) = 5 \sin(2\theta)$ , show that  $f(\pi - \frac{\pi}{4}) \neq f(\frac{\pi}{4})$ , yet the graph of  $r = 5 \sin(2\theta)$  is symmetric about the  $y$ -axis. (See Example 1.2.2 number 3.)

In Section ??, we discussed transformations of graphs. In Exercise 66 we have you and your classmates explore transformations of polar graphs.

66. For Exercises 66a and 66b below, let  $f(\theta) = \cos(\theta)$  and  $g(\theta) = 2 - \sin(\theta)$ .

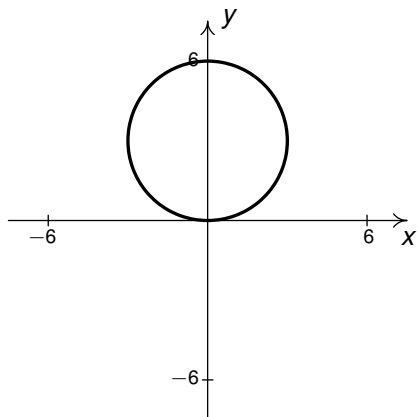
- (a) Using a graphing utility, compare the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$  to each of the graphs of  $r = f(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4})$ ,  $r = f(\theta + \frac{3\pi}{4})$ ,  $r = f(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4})$  and  $r = f(\theta - \frac{3\pi}{4})$ . Repeat this process for  $g(\theta)$ . In general, how do you think the graph of  $r = f(\theta + \alpha)$  compares with the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$ ?
- (b) Using a graphing utility, compare the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$  to each of the graphs of  $r = 2f(\theta)$ ,  $r = \frac{1}{2}f(\theta)$ ,  $r = -f(\theta)$  and  $r = -3f(\theta)$ . Repeat this process for  $g(\theta)$ . In general, how do you think the graph of  $r = k \cdot f(\theta)$  compares with the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$ ?  
Follow up question: does it matter if  $k > 0$  or  $k < 0$ ?

67. In light of Exercises 63 - 65, how would the graph of  $r = f(-\theta)$  compare with the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$  for a generic function  $f$ ? What about the graphs of  $r = -f(\theta)$  and  $r = f(\theta)$ ? What about  $r = f(\theta)$  and  $r = f(\pi - \theta)$ ? Test out your conjectures using a variety of polar functions found in this section with the help of a graphing utility.

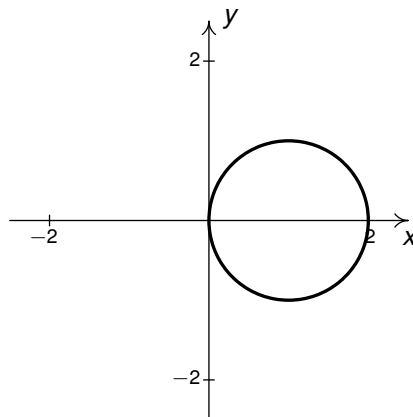
68. With the help of your classmates, research cardioid microphones.

### 1.2.2 Answers

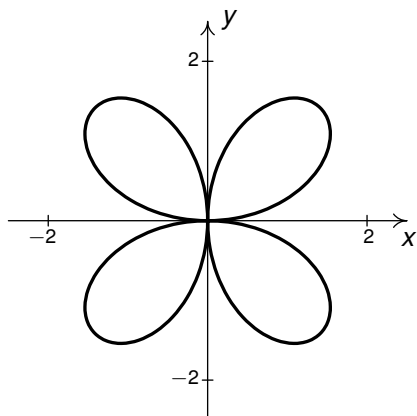
1. Circle:  $r = 6 \sin(\theta)$



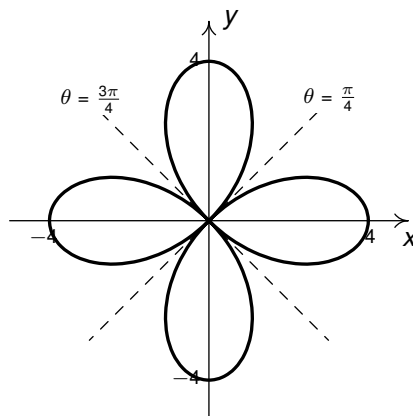
2. Circle:  $r = 2 \cos(\theta)$



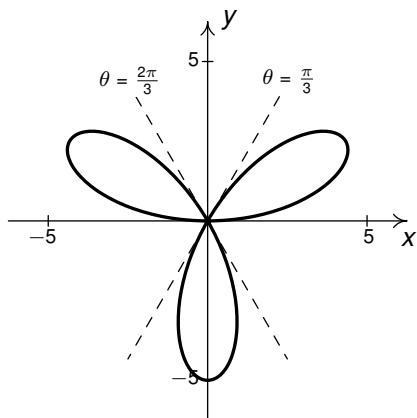
3. Rose:  $r = 2 \sin(2\theta)$



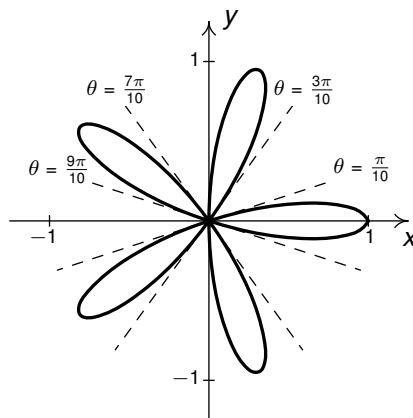
4. Rose:  $r = 4 \cos(2\theta)$



5. Rose:  $r = 5 \sin(3\theta)$

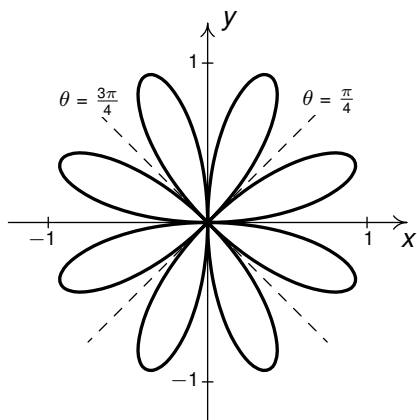


6. Rose:  $r = \cos(5\theta)$

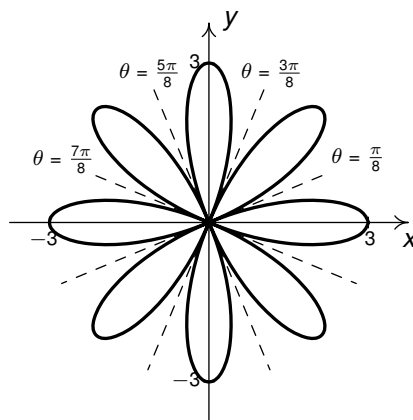




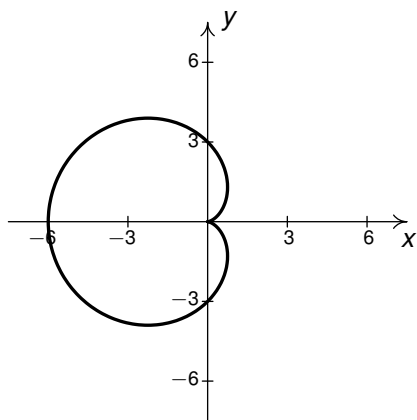
7. Rose:  $r = \sin(4\theta)$



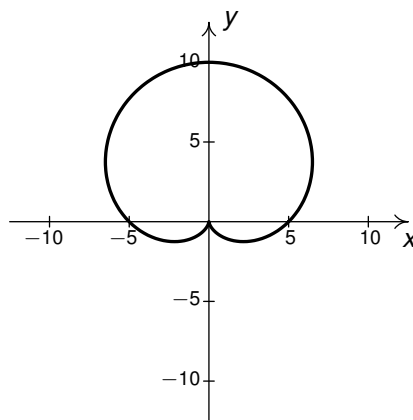
8. Rose:  $r = 3 \cos(4\theta)$



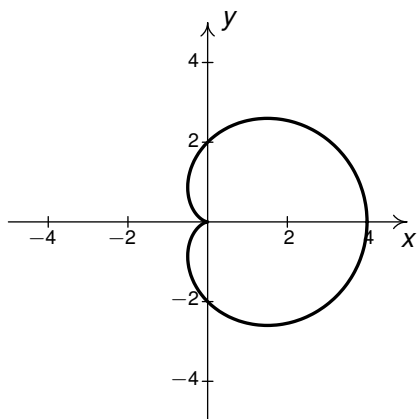
9. Cardioid:  $r = 3 - 3 \cos(\theta)$



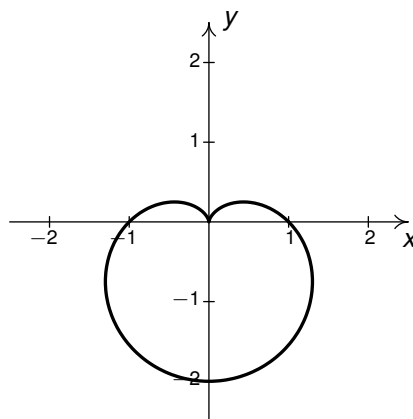
10. Cardioid:  $r = 5 + 5 \sin(\theta)$



11. Cardioid:  $r = 2 + 2 \cos(\theta)$

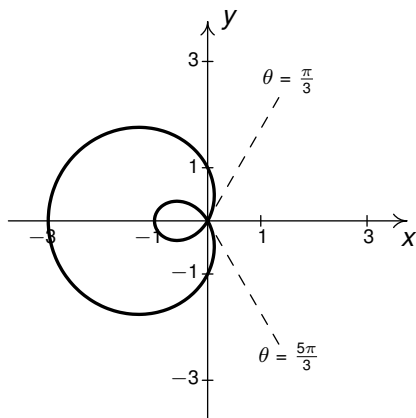


12. Cardioid:  $r = 1 - \sin(\theta)$

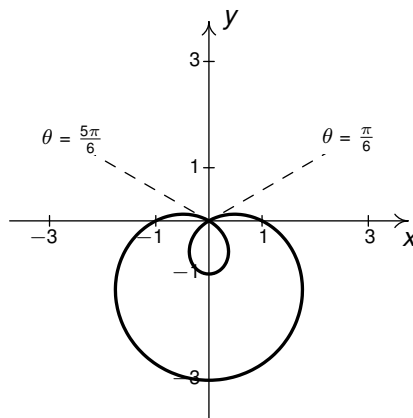


## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

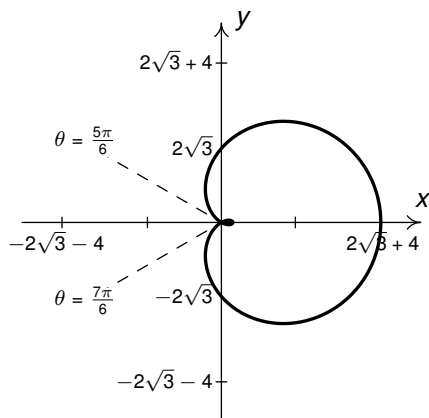
13. Limaçon:  $r = 1 - 2 \cos(\theta)$



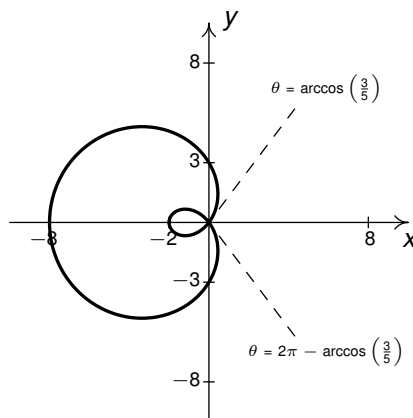
14. Limaçon:  $r = 1 - 2 \sin(\theta)$



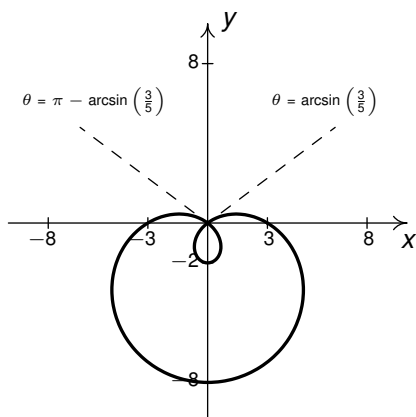
15. Limaçon:  $r = 2\sqrt{3} + 4 \cos(\theta)$



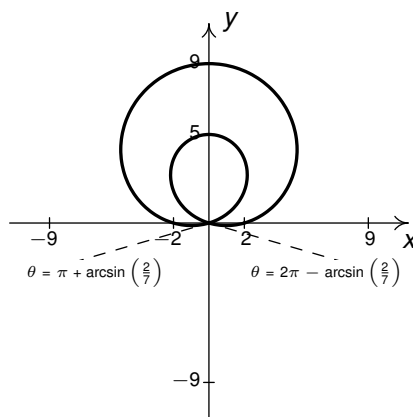
16. Limaçon:  $r = 3 - 5 \cos(\theta)$



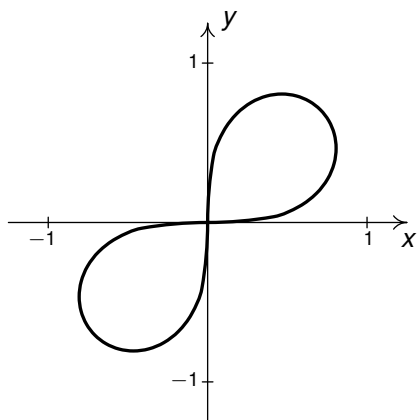
17. Limaçon:  $r = 3 - 5 \sin(\theta)$



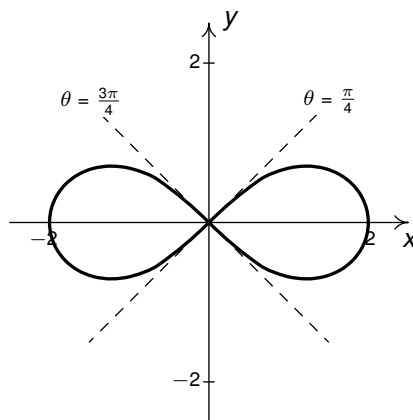
18. Limaçon:  $r = 2 + 7 \sin(\theta)$



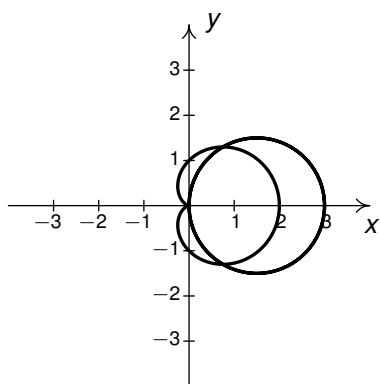
19. Lemniscate:  $r^2 = \sin(2\theta)$



20. Lemniscate:  $r^2 = 4 \cos(2\theta)$

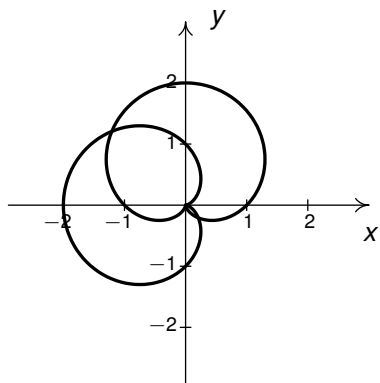


21.  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$  and  $r = 1 + \cos(\theta)$



$\left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{\pi}{3}\right), \left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{3}\right), \text{pole}$

22.  $r = 1 + \sin(\theta)$  and  $r = 1 - \cos(\theta)$

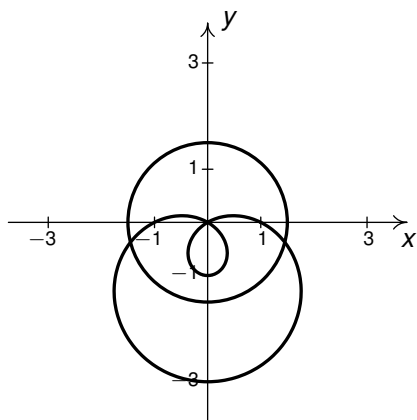


$\left(\frac{2 + \sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{4}\right), \left(\frac{2 - \sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right), \text{pole}$

## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

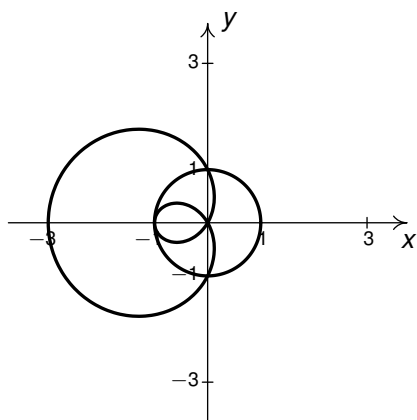
23.  $r = 1 - 2 \sin(\theta)$  and  $r = 2$

$$\left(2, \frac{7\pi}{6}\right), \left(2, \frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$$



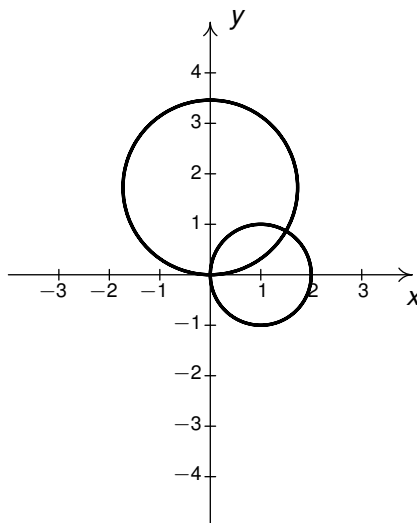
24.  $r = 1 - 2 \cos(\theta)$  and  $r = 1$

$$\left(1, \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(1, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right), (-1, 0)$$

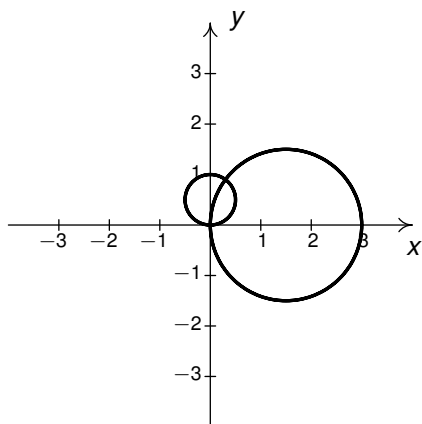


25.  $r = 2 \cos(\theta)$  and  $r = 2\sqrt{3} \sin(\theta)$

$$\left(\sqrt{3}, \frac{\pi}{6}\right), \text{pole}$$

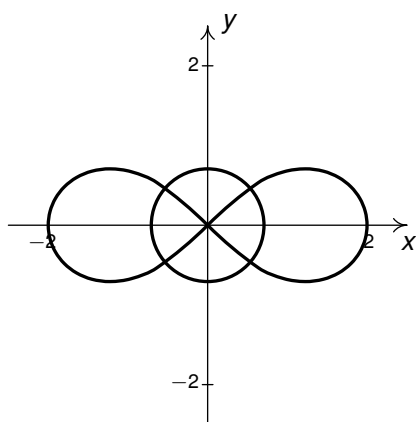


26.  $r = 3 \cos(\theta)$  and  $r = \sin(\theta)$



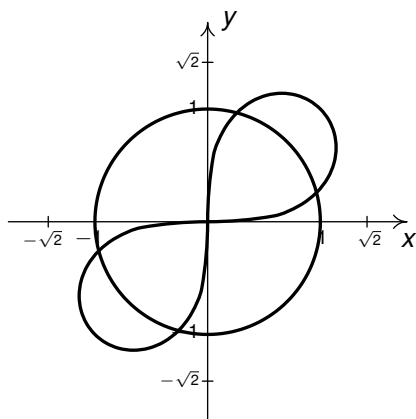
$\left(\frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}, \arctan(3)\right)$ , pole

27.  $r^2 = 4 \cos(2\theta)$  and  $r = \sqrt{2}$



$\left(\sqrt{2}, \frac{\pi}{6}\right), \left(\sqrt{2}, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right), \left(\sqrt{2}, \frac{7\pi}{6}\right), \left(\sqrt{2}, \frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$

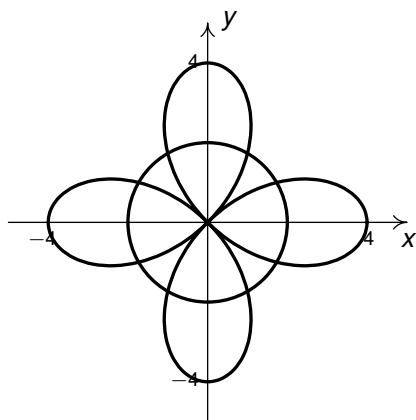
28.  $r^2 = 2 \sin(2\theta)$  and  $r = 1$



$\left(1, \frac{\pi}{12}\right), \left(1, \frac{5\pi}{12}\right), \left(1, \frac{13\pi}{12}\right), \left(1, \frac{17\pi}{12}\right)$

1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

29.  $r = 4 \cos(2\theta)$  and  $r = 2$

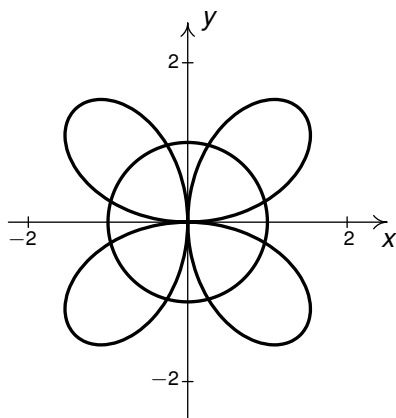


$$\left(2, \frac{\pi}{6}\right), \left(2, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right), \left(2, \frac{7\pi}{6}\right),$$

$$\left(2, \frac{11\pi}{6}\right), \left(-2, \frac{\pi}{3}\right), \left(-2, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right),$$

$$\left(-2, \frac{4\pi}{3}\right), \left(-2, \frac{5\pi}{3}\right)$$

30.  $r = 2 \sin(2\theta)$  and  $r = 1$

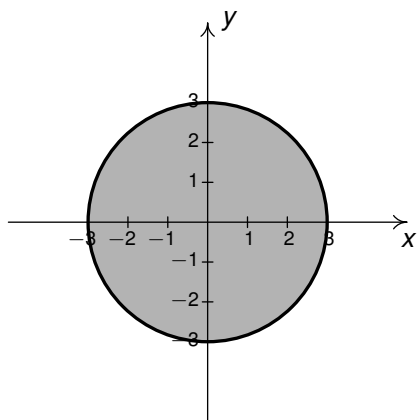


$$\left(1, \frac{\pi}{12}\right), \left(1, \frac{5\pi}{12}\right), \left(1, \frac{13\pi}{12}\right),$$

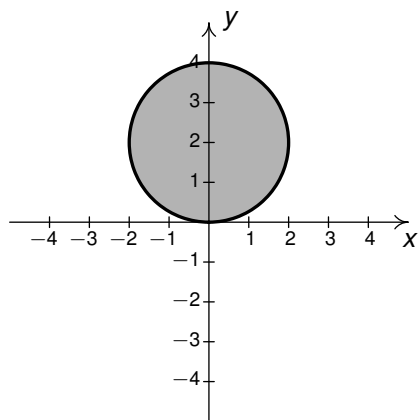
$$\left(1, \frac{17\pi}{12}\right), \left(-1, \frac{7\pi}{12}\right), \left(-1, \frac{11\pi}{12}\right),$$

$$\left(-1, \frac{19\pi}{12}\right), \left(-1, \frac{23\pi}{12}\right)$$

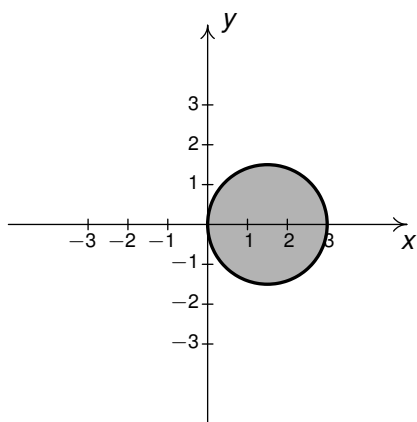
31.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3, 0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi\}$



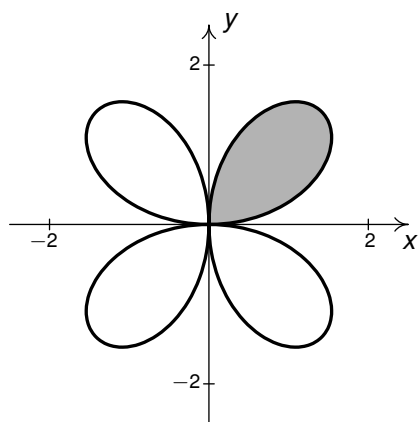
32.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 4 \sin(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi\}$



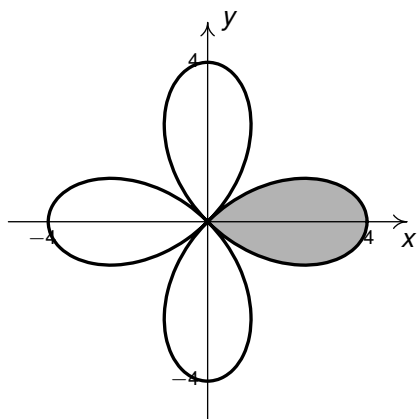
33.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3 \cos(\theta), -\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$



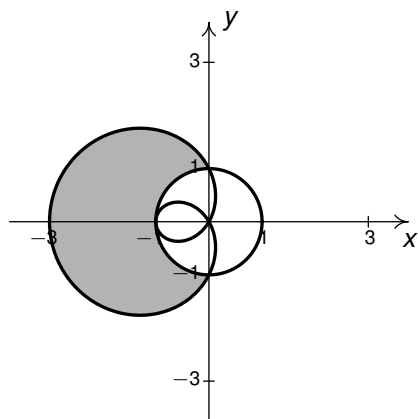
34.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \sin(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$



35.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 4 \cos(2\theta), -\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{4}\}$

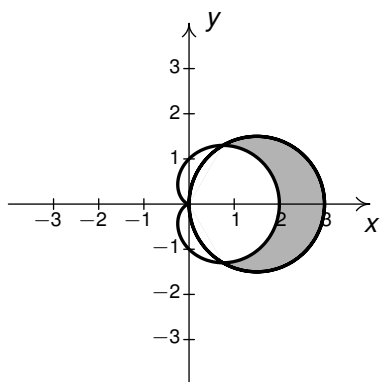


36.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 1 \leq r \leq 1 - 2 \cos(\theta), \frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}\}$

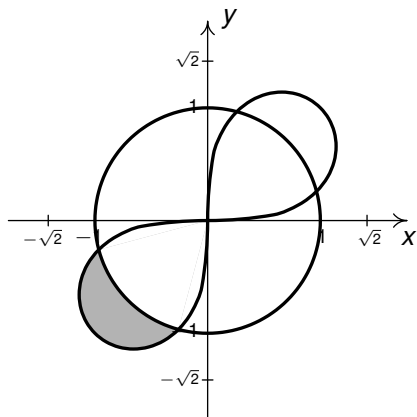


## 1.2. THE GRAPHS OF POLAR EQUATIONS

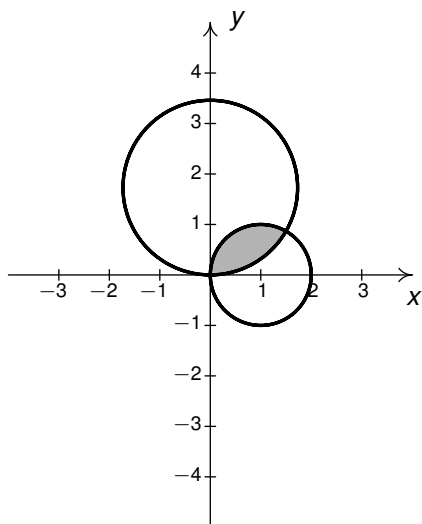
37.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 1 + \cos(\theta) \leq r \leq 3 \cos(\theta), -\frac{\pi}{3} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{3}\}$



38.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 1 \leq r \leq \sqrt{2 \sin(2\theta)}, \frac{13\pi}{12} \leq \theta \leq \frac{17\pi}{12}\}$

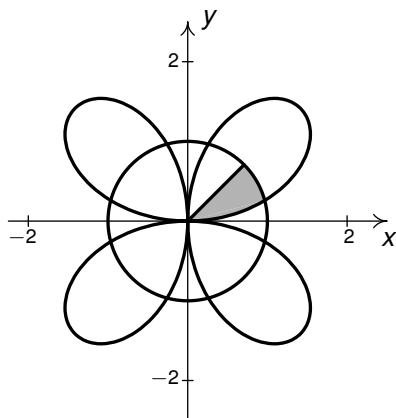


39.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2\sqrt{3} \sin(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{6}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \cos(\theta), \frac{\pi}{6} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$





40.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 \sin(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{12}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 1, \frac{\pi}{12} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{4}\}$



41.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 5, 0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi\}$

42.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 5, \pi \leq \theta \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}\}$

43.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 6 \sin(\theta), \frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \pi\}$

44.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 4 \cos(\theta) \leq r \leq 0, \frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \pi\}$

45.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3 - 3 \cos(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \pi\}$

46.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 - 2 \sin(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 - 2 \sin(\theta), \frac{3\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq 2\pi\}$   
or  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 2 - 2 \sin(\theta), \frac{3\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{5\pi}{2}\}$

47.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3 \cos(4\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{8}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3 \cos(4\theta), \frac{15\pi}{8} \leq \theta \leq 2\pi\}$   
or  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3 \cos(4\theta), -\frac{\pi}{8} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{8}\}$

48.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 3 \leq r \leq 5, 0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi\}$

49.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3 \cos(\theta), -\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq 0\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid \sin(\theta) \leq r \leq 3 \cos(\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \arctan(3)\}$

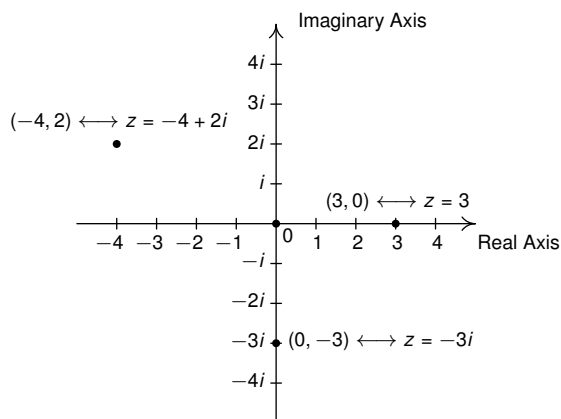
50.  $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 6 \sin(2\theta), 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{12}\} \cup \{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 3, \frac{\pi}{12} \leq \theta \leq \frac{5\pi}{12}\} \cup$   
 $\{(r, \theta) \mid 0 \leq r \leq 6 \sin(2\theta), \frac{5\pi}{12} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}\}$

### 1.3 The Polar Form of Complex Numbers

In this section, we return to our study of complex numbers which were first introduced in Section ?? . Recall that a **complex number** is a number of the form  $z = a + bi$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers and  $i$  is the imaginary unit defined by  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ .

The number  $a$  is called the **real part** of  $z$ , denoted  $\operatorname{Re}(z)$ , while the real number  $b$  is called the **imaginary part** of  $z$ , denoted  $\operatorname{Im}(z)$ . From Intermediate Algebra, we know that if  $z = a + bi = c + di$  where  $a, b, c$  and  $d$  are real numbers, then  $a = c$  and  $b = d$ , which means  $\operatorname{Re}(z)$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(z)$  are well-defined.<sup>1</sup>

To start off this section, we associate each complex number  $z = a + bi$  with the point  $(a, b)$  on the Cartesian (rectangular) coordinate plane. In this case, the  $x$ -axis is relabeled as the **real axis**, which corresponds to the real number line as usual, and the  $y$ -axis is relabeled as the **imaginary axis**, which is demarcated in increments of the imaginary unit  $i$ . The plane determined by these two axes is called the **complex plane**.



The Complex Plane

Since the ordered pair  $(a, b)$  gives the *rectangular* coordinates associated with  $z = a + bi$ , the expression  $z = a + bi$  is called the **rectangular form** of the complex number  $z$ .

We could just as easily associate  $z$  with a pair of *polar* coordinates  $(r, \theta)$ . Although it is not as straightforward as the definitions of  $\operatorname{Re}(z)$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(z)$ , we give  $r$  and  $\theta$  special names in relation to  $z$  below.

**Definition 1.1. The Modulus and Argument of Complex Numbers:**

Let  $z = a + bi$  be a complex number with  $a = \operatorname{Re}(z)$  and  $b = \operatorname{Im}(z)$ . Let  $(r, \theta)$  be a polar representation of the point with rectangular coordinates  $(a, b)$  where  $r \geq 0$ .

- The **modulus** of  $z$ , denoted  $|z|$ , is defined by  $|z| = r$ .
- The angle  $\theta$  is an **argument** of  $z$ . The set of all arguments of  $z$  is denoted  $\arg(z)$ .
- If  $z \neq 0$  and  $-\pi < \theta \leq \pi$ , then  $\theta$  is the **principal argument** of  $z$ , written  $\theta = \operatorname{Arg}(z)$ .

<sup>1</sup>'Well-defined' means that no matter how we express  $z$ , the number  $\operatorname{Re}(z)$  is always the same, and the number  $\operatorname{Im}(z)$  is always the same. In other words,  $\operatorname{Re}$  and  $\operatorname{Im}$  are *functions* of complex numbers.

Some remarks about Definition 1.1 are in order. We know from Section 1.1 that every point in the plane has infinitely many polar coordinate representations  $(r, \theta)$  which means it's worth our time to make sure the quantities 'modulus', 'argument' and 'principal argument' are well-defined.

Concerning the modulus, if  $z = 0$  then the point associated with  $z$  is the origin. In this case, the *only*  $r$ -value which can be used here is  $r = 0$ . Hence for  $z = 0$ ,  $|z| = 0$  is well-defined.

If  $z \neq 0$ , then the point associated with  $z$  is not the origin, and there are *two* possibilities for  $r$ : one positive and one negative. However, we stipulated  $r \geq 0$  in our definition so this pins down the value of  $|z|$  to one and only one number. Thus the modulus is well-defined in this case, too.<sup>2</sup>

Even with the requirement  $r \geq 0$ , there are infinitely many angles  $\theta$  which can be used in a polar representation of a point  $(r, \theta)$ . If  $z \neq 0$  then the point in question is not the origin, so all of these angles  $\theta$  are coterminal. Since coterminal angles are exactly  $2\pi$  radians apart, we are guaranteed that only one of them lies in the interval  $(-\pi, \pi]$ , and this angle is what we call the principal argument of  $z$ ,  $\text{Arg}(z)$ .

The set  $\arg(z)$  of all arguments of  $z$  can be described as  $\arg(z) = \{\text{Arg}(z) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\}$ . Note that since  $\arg(z)$  is a *set*, we will write ' $\theta \in \arg(z)$ ' to mean ' $\theta$  is in<sup>3</sup> the set of arguments of  $z$ '.

If  $z = 0$  then the point in question is the origin, which we know can be represented in polar coordinates as  $(0, \theta)$  for *any* angle  $\theta$ . In this case, we have  $\arg(0) = (-\infty, \infty)$  and since there is no one value of  $\theta$  which lies  $(-\pi, \pi]$ , we leave  $\text{Arg}(0)$  undefined. It is time for an example.

**Example 1.3.1.** For each of the following complex numbers find  $\text{Re}(z)$ ,  $\text{Im}(z)$ ,  $|z|$ ,  $\arg(z)$  and  $\text{Arg}(z)$ . Plot each complex number  $z$  in the complex plane.

1.  $z = \sqrt{3} - i$
2.  $z = -2 + 4i$
3.  $z = 3i$
4.  $z = -117$

**Solution.**

1. For  $z = \sqrt{3} - i = \sqrt{3} + (-1)i$ , we have  $\text{Re}(z) = \sqrt{3}$  and  $\text{Im}(z) = -1$ . To find  $|z|$ ,  $\arg(z)$  and  $\text{Arg}(z)$ , we need to find a polar representation  $(r, \theta)$  with  $r \geq 0$  for the point  $P(\sqrt{3}, -1)$  associated with  $z$ .

We know  $r^2 = (\sqrt{3})^2 + (-1)^2 = 4$ , so  $r = \pm 2$ . Since we require  $r \geq 0$ , we choose  $r = 2$ , so  $|z| = 2$ .

To find a corresponding angle  $\theta$ , we note that since  $r > 0$  and  $P$  lies in Quadrant IV,  $\theta$  must be a Quadrant IV angle. We know  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{3}} = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ , so  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{6} + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ . Hence,  $\arg(z) = \{-\frac{\pi}{6} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\}$ . Of these values, only  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{6}$  satisfies  $-\pi < \theta \leq \pi$ , hence we get  $\text{Arg}(z) = -\frac{\pi}{6}$ .

2. The complex number  $z = -2 + 4i$  has  $\text{Re}(z) = -2$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 4$ , and is associated with the point  $P(-2, 4)$ . Our next task is to find a polar representation  $(r, \theta)$  for  $P$  where  $r \geq 0$ .

Running through the usual calculations gives  $r = 2\sqrt{5}$ , so  $|z| = 2\sqrt{5}$ . To find  $\theta$ , we get  $\tan(\theta) = -2$ , and since  $r > 0$  and  $P$  lies in Quadrant II, we know  $\theta$  is a Quadrant II angle.

<sup>2</sup>In case you're wondering, the use of the absolute value notation  $|z|$  for modulus will be explained shortly.

<sup>3</sup>Recall the symbol being used here, ' $\in$ ', is the mathematical symbol which denotes membership in a set. See Section ??.

### 1.3. THE POLAR FORM OF COMPLEX NUMBERS COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

We find  $\theta = \pi + \arctan(-2) + 2\pi k$ , or, more succinctly  $\theta = \pi - \arctan(2) + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ . Hence  $\arg(z) = \{\pi - \arctan(2) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\}$ . Only  $\theta = \pi - \arctan(2)$  satisfies  $-\pi < \theta \leq \pi$ , so we get  $\text{Arg}(z) = \pi - \arctan(2)$ .

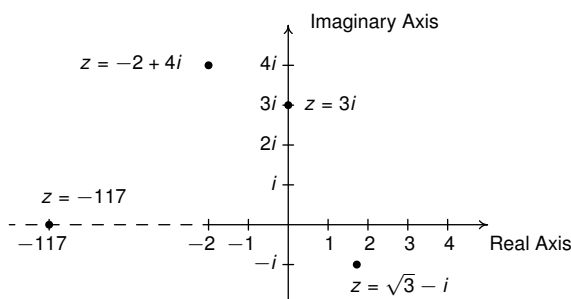
3. We rewrite  $z = 3i$  as  $z = 0 + 3i$  to find  $\text{Re}(z) = 0$  and  $\text{Im}(z) = 3$ . The point in the plane which corresponds to  $z$  is  $(0, 3)$  and while we could go through the usual calculations to find the required polar form of this point, we can obtain the answer 'by inspection.'

The point  $(0, 3)$  lies 3 units away from the origin on the positive  $y$ -axis. Hence,  $r = |z| = 3$  and  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ . We get  $\arg(z) = \{\frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

4. As in the previous problem, we write  $z = -117 = -117 + 0i$  so  $\text{Re}(z) = -117$  and  $\text{Im}(z) = 0$ . The number  $z = -117$  corresponds to the point  $(-117, 0)$ , and this is another instance where we can determine the polar form 'by eye'.

The point  $(-117, 0)$  is 117 units away from the origin along the negative  $x$ -axis. Hence,  $r = |z| = 117$  and  $\theta = \pi + 2\pi = (2k + 1)\pi$  for integers  $k$ . We have  $\arg(z) = \{(2k + 1)\pi \mid k \text{ is an integer}\}$ .

Only one of these values,  $\theta = \pi$ , (just barely!) lies in the interval  $(-\pi, \pi]$  which means  $\text{Arg}(z) = \pi$ . We plot  $z$  along with the other numbers in this example below.



□

Now that we've had practice computing the modulus of a complex number, we state some properties below.

**Theorem 1.3. Properties of the Modulus:** Let  $z$  and  $w$  be complex numbers.

- $|z|$  is the distance from  $z$  to 0 in the complex plane
- $|z| \geq 0$  and  $|z| = 0$  if and only if  $z = 0$
- $|z| = \sqrt{\text{Re}(z)^2 + \text{Im}(z)^2}$
- **Product Rule:**  $|zw| = |z||w|$
- **Power Rule:**  $|z^n| = |z|^n$  for all natural numbers,  $n$
- **Quotient Rule:**  $\left|\frac{z}{w}\right| = \frac{|z|}{|w|}$ , provided  $w \neq 0$

To prove the first three properties in Theorem 1.3, suppose  $z = a + bi$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers. To determine  $|z|$ , we find a polar representation  $(r, \theta)$  with  $r \geq 0$  for the point  $(a, b)$ .

From Section 1.1, we know  $r^2 = a^2 + b^2$  so that  $r = \pm\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ . Since we require  $r \geq 0$ , then it must be that  $r = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ , which means  $|z| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ . Using the distance formula, we find the distance from  $(0, 0)$  to  $(a, b)$  is also  $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ , establishing the first property.<sup>4</sup>

For the second property, note that since  $|z|$  is a distance,  $|z| \geq 0$ . Furthermore,  $|z| = 0$  if and only if the distance from  $z$  to 0 is 0, and the latter happens if and only if  $z = 0$ , which is what we were asked to show.<sup>5</sup>

For the third property, we note that since  $a = \operatorname{Re}(z)$  and  $b = \operatorname{Im}(z)$ ,  $z = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = \sqrt{\operatorname{Re}(z)^2 + \operatorname{Im}(z)^2}$ .

To prove the product rule, suppose  $z = a + bi$  and  $w = c + di$  for real numbers  $a, b, c$  and  $d$ . Then  $zw = (a + bi)(c + di)$ . After the usual arithmetic<sup>6</sup> we get  $zw = (ac - bd) + (ad + bc)i$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
 |zw| &= \sqrt{(ac - bd)^2 + (ad + bc)^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{a^2c^2 - 2abcd + b^2d^2 + a^2d^2 + 2abcd + b^2c^2} && \text{Expand} \\
 &= \sqrt{a^2c^2 + a^2d^2 + b^2c^2 + b^2d^2} && \text{Rearrange terms} \\
 &= \sqrt{a^2(c^2 + d^2) + b^2(c^2 + d^2)} && \text{Factor} \\
 &= \sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)(c^2 + d^2)} && \text{Factor} \\
 &= \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \sqrt{c^2 + d^2} && \text{Product Rule for Radicals} \\
 &= |z||w| && \text{Definition of } |z| \text{ and } |w|
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $|zw| = |z||w|$  as required.

Now that the Product Rule has been established, we use it and the Principle of Mathematical Induction<sup>7</sup> to prove the power rule. Let  $P(n)$  be the statement  $|z^n| = |z|^n$ . Then  $P(1)$  is true since  $|z^1| = |z| = |z|^1$ .

Next, assume  $P(k)$  is true. That is, assume  $|z^k| = |z|^k$  for some  $k \geq 1$ . Our job is to show that  $P(k + 1)$  is true, namely  $|z^{k+1}| = |z|^{k+1}$ . As is customary with induction proofs, we first try to reduce the problem in such a way as to use the Induction Hypothesis.

$$\begin{aligned}
 |z^{k+1}| &= |z^k z| && \text{Properties of Exponents} \\
 &= |z^k| |z| && \text{Product Rule} \\
 &= |z|^k |z| && \text{Induction Hypothesis} \\
 &= |z|^{k+1} && \text{Properties of Exponents}
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $P(k + 1)$  is true, which means  $|z^n| = |z|^n$  is true for all natural numbers  $n$ .

<sup>4</sup>Since the absolute value  $|x|$  of a real number  $x$  can be viewed as the distance from  $x$  to 0 on the number line, this first property justifies the notation  $|z|$  for modulus. We leave it to the reader to show that if  $z$  is real, then the definition of modulus coincides with absolute value so the notation  $|z|$  is unambiguous.

<sup>5</sup>This may be considered by some to be a bit of a cheat, so we work through the underlying Algebra to see this is true. We know  $|z| = 0$  if and only if  $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = 0$  if and only if  $a^2 + b^2 = 0$ , which is true if and only if  $a = b = 0$ . The latter happens if and only if  $z = a + bi = 0$ . There.

<sup>6</sup>See Example ?? in Section ?? for a review of complex number arithmetic.

<sup>7</sup>See Section ?? for a review of this technique.

### 1.3. THE POLAR FORM OF COMPLEX NUMBERS COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

Like the Power Rule, the Quotient Rule can also be established with the help of the Product Rule. We assume  $w \neq 0$  (so  $|w| \neq 0$ ) and we get

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{z}{w} \right| &= \left| z \left( \frac{1}{w} \right) \right| \\ &= |z| \left| \frac{1}{w} \right| \quad \text{Product Rule.} \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the proof really boils down to showing  $\left| \frac{1}{w} \right| = \frac{1}{|w|}$ . This is left as an exercise.

Next, we characterize the argument of a complex number in terms of its real and imaginary parts.

**Theorem 1.4. Properties of the Argument:** Let  $z$  be a complex number.

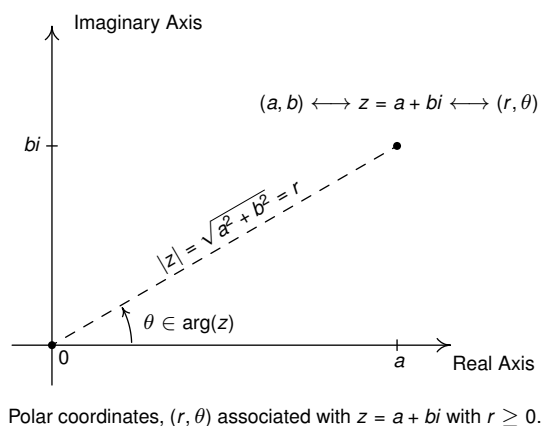
- If  $\operatorname{Re}(z) \neq 0$  and  $\theta \in \arg(z)$ , then  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)}{\operatorname{Re}(z)}$ .
- If  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = 0$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(z) > 0$ , then  $\arg(z) = \left\{ \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer} \right\}$ .
- If  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = 0$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(z) < 0$ , then  $\arg(z) = \left\{ -\frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer} \right\}$ .
- If  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = \operatorname{Im}(z) = 0$ , then  $z = 0$  and  $\arg(z) = (-\infty, \infty)$ .

To prove Theorem 1.4, suppose  $z = a + bi$  for real numbers  $a$  and  $b$ . By definition,  $a = \operatorname{Re}(z)$  and  $b = \operatorname{Im}(z)$ , so the point associated with  $z$  is  $(a, b) = (\operatorname{Re}(z), \operatorname{Im}(z))$ . From Section 1.1, we know that if  $(r, \theta)$  is a polar representation for  $(\operatorname{Re}(z), \operatorname{Im}(z))$ , then  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)}{\operatorname{Re}(z)}$ , provided  $\operatorname{Re}(z) \neq 0$ .

If  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = 0$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(z) > 0$ , then  $z$  lies on the positive imaginary axis. Since we take  $r > 0$ , we have that  $\theta$  is coterminal with  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ , and the result follows. If  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = 0$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(z) < 0$ , then  $z$  lies on the negative imaginary axis, and a similar argument shows  $\theta$  is coterminal with  $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ .

The last property in the theorem was already discussed in the remarks following Definition 1.1.

Our next goal is to completely marry the Geometry and the Algebra of the complex numbers. To that end, consider the figure below.



We know from Theorem 1.1 that  $a = r \cos(\theta)$  and  $b = r \sin(\theta)$ . Making these substitutions for  $a$  and  $b$  gives  $z = a + bi = r \cos(\theta) + r \sin(\theta)i = r [\cos(\theta) + i \sin(\theta)]$ .

The expression ' $\cos(\theta) + i \sin(\theta)$ ' is abbreviated  $\text{cis}(\theta)$  so we can write  $z = r \text{cis}(\theta) = |z| \text{cis}(\theta)$ .

**Definition 1.2. A Polar Form of a Complex Number:**

Suppose  $z$  is a complex number and  $\theta \in \arg(z)$ . The expression:

$$|z| \text{cis}(\theta) = |z| [\cos(\theta) + i \sin(\theta)]$$

is called a polar form for  $z$ .

Since there are infinitely many choices for  $\theta \in \arg(z)$ , there are infinitely many polar forms for  $z$ , so we used the indefinite article 'a' in Definition 1.2. It is time for an example.

**Example 1.3.2.**

- Find the rectangular form of the following complex numbers. Find  $\text{Re}(z)$  and  $\text{Im}(z)$ .

(a)  $z = 4 \text{cis} \left( \frac{2\pi}{3} \right)$       (b)  $z = 2 \text{cis} \left( -\frac{3\pi}{4} \right)$       (c)  $z = 3 \text{cis}(0)$       (d)  $z = \text{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$

- Use the results from Example 1.3.1 to find a polar form of the following complex numbers.

(a)  $z = \sqrt{3} - i$       (b)  $z = -2 + 4i$       (c)  $z = 3i$       (d)  $z = -117$

**Solution.**

- The key to this problem is to write out  $\text{cis}(\theta)$  as  $\cos(\theta) + i \sin(\theta)$ .

- By definition,  $z = 4 \text{cis} \left( \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) = 4 \left[ \cos \left( \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) + i \sin \left( \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \right]$ . Simplifying, we get  $z = -2 + 2i\sqrt{3}$ , so that  $\text{Re}(z) = -2$  and  $\text{Im}(z) = 2\sqrt{3}$ .
- Expanding, we get  $z = 2 \text{cis} \left( -\frac{3\pi}{4} \right) = 2 \left[ \cos \left( -\frac{3\pi}{4} \right) + i \sin \left( -\frac{3\pi}{4} \right) \right]$ . Hence,  $z = -\sqrt{2} - i\sqrt{2}$ , so  $\text{Re}(z) = -\sqrt{2}$  and  $\text{Im}(z) = -\sqrt{2}$ .
- We get  $z = 3 \text{cis}(0) = 3 [\cos(0) + i \sin(0)] = 3$ . Writing  $3 = 3 + 0i$ , we get  $\text{Re}(z) = 3$  and  $\text{Im}(z) = 0$ , which makes sense seeing as 3 is a real number.
- Lastly, we have  $z = \text{cis} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \right) = \cos \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \right) + i \sin \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \right) = i$ . Since  $i = 0 + 1i$ , we get  $\text{Re}(z) = 0$  and  $\text{Im}(z) = 1$ . Since  $i$  is called the 'imaginary unit,' these answers make perfect sense.

- To write a polar form of a complex number  $z$ , we need two pieces of information: the modulus  $|z|$  and an argument (not necessarily the principal argument) of  $z$ .

We shamelessly mine our solution to Example 1.3.1 to find what we need.

- For  $z = \sqrt{3} - i$ ,  $|z| = 2$  and  $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{6}$ , so  $z = 2 \text{cis} \left( -\frac{\pi}{6} \right)$ . We can check our answer by converting it back to rectangular form to see that it simplifies to  $z = \sqrt{3} - i$ .

### 1.3. THE POLAR FORM OF COMPLEX NUMBERS COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

- (b) For  $z = -2 + 4i$ ,  $|z| = 2\sqrt{5}$  and  $\theta = \pi - \arctan(2)$ . Hence,  $z = 2\sqrt{5}\text{cis}(\pi - \arctan(2))$ . It is a good exercise to actually show that this polar form reduces to  $z = -2 + 4i$ .
- (c) For  $z = 3i$ ,  $|z| = 3$  and  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ . In this case,  $z = 3\text{cis}(\frac{\pi}{2})$ . This can be checked geometrically. Head out 3 units from 0 along the positive real axis. Rotating  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  radians counter-clockwise lands you exactly 3 units above 0 on the imaginary axis at  $z = 3i$ .
- (d) Last but not least, for  $z = -117$ ,  $|z| = 117$  and  $\theta = \pi$ . We get  $z = 117\text{cis}(\pi)$ . As with the previous problem, our answer is easily checked geometrically.  $\square$

The following theorem summarizes the advantages of working with complex numbers in polar form.

#### Theorem 1.5. Products, Powers and Quotients Complex Numbers in Polar Form:

Suppose  $z$  and  $w$  are complex numbers with polar forms  $z = |z|\text{cis}(\alpha)$  and  $w = |w|\text{cis}(\beta)$ . Then

- **Product Rule:**  $zw = |z||w|\text{cis}(\alpha + \beta)$
- **Power Rule (DeMoivre's Theorem):**  $z^n = |z|^n\text{cis}(n\theta)$  for every natural number  $n$
- **Quotient Rule:**  $\frac{z}{w} = \frac{|z|}{|w|}\text{cis}(\alpha - \beta)$ , provided  $|w| \neq 0$

The proof of Theorem 1.5 requires a healthy mix of definition, arithmetic and identities. We first start with the product rule.

$$\begin{aligned} zw &= [|z|\text{cis}(\alpha)] [|w|\text{cis}(\beta)] \\ &= |z||w| [\cos(\alpha) + i \sin(\alpha)] [\cos(\beta) + i \sin(\beta)] \end{aligned}$$

We now focus on the quantity in brackets on the right hand side of the equation.

$$\begin{aligned} [\cos(\alpha) + i \sin(\alpha)] [\cos(\beta) + i \sin(\beta)] &= \cos(\alpha) \cos(\beta) + i \cos(\alpha) \sin(\beta) \\ &\quad + i \sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) + i^2 \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta) \\ &= \cos(\alpha) \cos(\beta) + i^2 \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta) && \text{Rearranging terms} \\ &\quad + i \sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) + i \cos(\alpha) \sin(\beta) \\ &= (\cos(\alpha) \cos(\beta) - \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta)) && \text{Since } i^2 = -1 \\ &\quad + i (\sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) + \cos(\alpha) \sin(\beta)) && \text{Factor out } i \\ &= \cos(\alpha + \beta) + i \sin(\alpha + \beta) && \text{Sum identities} \\ &= \text{cis}(\alpha + \beta) && \text{Definition of 'cis'} \end{aligned}$$

Putting this together with our earlier work, we get  $zw = |z||w|\text{cis}(\alpha + \beta)$ , as required.

Next take aim at the Power Rule, better known as DeMoivre's Theorem.<sup>8</sup> We proceed by induction on  $n$ . Let  $P(n)$  be the sentence  $z^n = |z|^n\text{cis}(n\theta)$ . Then  $P(1)$  is true, since  $z^1 = z = |z|\text{cis}(\theta) = |z|^1\text{cis}(1 \cdot \theta)$ .

<sup>8</sup>Compare this proof with the proof of the Power Rule in Theorem 1.3.



We now assume  $P(k)$  is true, that is, we assume  $z^k = |z|^k \text{cis}(k\theta)$  for some  $k \geq 1$ . Our goal is to show that  $P(k+1)$  is true, or that  $z^{k+1} = |z|^{k+1} \text{cis}((k+1)\theta)$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} z^{k+1} &= z^k z && \text{Properties of Exponents} \\ &= (|z|^k \text{cis}(k\theta)) (|z| \text{cis}(\theta)) && \text{Induction Hypothesis} \\ &= (|z|^k |z|) \text{cis}(k\theta + \theta) && \text{Product Rule} \\ &= |z|^{k+1} \text{cis}((k+1)\theta) \end{aligned}$$

Hence, assuming  $P(k)$  is true, we have that  $P(k+1)$  is true, so by the Principle of Mathematical Induction,  $z^n = |z|^n \text{cis}(n\theta)$  for all natural numbers  $n$ .

The last property in Theorem 1.5 to prove is the quotient rule. Assuming  $|w| \neq 0$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{z}{w} &= \frac{|z| \text{cis}(\alpha)}{|w| \text{cis}(\beta)} \\ &= \left( \frac{|z|}{|w|} \right) \frac{\cos(\alpha) + i \sin(\alpha)}{\cos(\beta) + i \sin(\beta)} \end{aligned}$$

Next, we multiply both the numerator and denominator of the right hand side by  $(\cos(\beta) - i \sin(\beta))$  which is the complex conjugate of  $(\cos(\beta) + i \sin(\beta))$  to get

$$\frac{z}{w} = \left( \frac{|z|}{|w|} \right) \frac{\cos(\alpha) + i \sin(\alpha)}{\cos(\beta) + i \sin(\beta)} \cdot \frac{\cos(\beta) - i \sin(\beta)}{\cos(\beta) - i \sin(\beta)}$$

If we let the numerator be  $N = [\cos(\alpha) + i \sin(\alpha)][\cos(\beta) - i \sin(\beta)]$  and simplify we get

$$\begin{aligned} N &= [\cos(\alpha) + i \sin(\alpha)][\cos(\beta) - i \sin(\beta)] \\ &= \cos(\alpha) \cos(\beta) - i \cos(\alpha) \sin(\beta) + i \sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) - i^2 \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta) && \text{Expand} \\ &= [\cos(\alpha) \cos(\beta) + \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta)] + i [\sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) - \cos(\alpha) \sin(\beta)] && \text{Rearrange and Factor} \\ &= \cos(\alpha - \beta) + i \sin(\alpha - \beta) && \text{Difference Identities} \\ &= \text{cis}(\alpha - \beta) && \text{Definition of 'cis'} \end{aligned}$$

If we call the denominator  $D$  then we get

$$\begin{aligned} D &= [\cos(\beta) + i \sin(\beta)][\cos(\beta) - i \sin(\beta)] \\ &= \cos^2(\beta) - i \cos(\beta) \sin(\beta) + i \cos(\beta) \sin(\beta) - i^2 \sin^2(\beta) && \text{Expand} \\ &= \cos^2(\beta) - i^2 \sin^2(\beta) && \text{Simplify} \\ &= \cos^2(\beta) + \sin^2(\beta) && \text{Again, } i^2 = -1 \\ &= 1 && \text{Pythagorean Identity} \end{aligned}$$

Putting it all together, we get

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{z}{w} &= \left( \frac{|z|}{|w|} \right) \frac{\cos(\alpha) + i \sin(\alpha)}{\cos(\beta) + i \sin(\beta)} \cdot \frac{\cos(\beta) - i \sin(\beta)}{\cos(\beta) - i \sin(\beta)} \\ &= \left( \frac{|z|}{|w|} \right) \frac{\text{cis}(\alpha - \beta)}{1} \\ &= \frac{|z|}{|w|} \text{cis}(\alpha - \beta)\end{aligned}$$

and we are done. The next example makes good use of Theorem 1.5.

**Example 1.3.3.** Let  $z = 2\sqrt{3} + 2i$  and  $w = -1 + i\sqrt{3}$ . Use Theorem 1.5 to find the following.

1.  $zw$

2.  $w^5$

3.  $\frac{z}{w}$

Write your final answers in rectangular form.

**Solution.** In order to use Theorem 1.5, we need to write  $z$  and  $w$  in polar form.

For  $z = 2\sqrt{3} + 2i$ , we find  $|z| = \sqrt{(2\sqrt{3})^2 + (2)^2} = \sqrt{16} = 4$ . If  $\theta \in \arg(z)$ , then  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{\text{Re}(z)} = \frac{2}{2\sqrt{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ . Since  $z$  lies in Quadrant I, we have  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6} + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ . Hence,  $z = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ .

For  $w = -1 + i\sqrt{3}$ , we have  $|w| = \sqrt{(-1)^2 + (\sqrt{3})^2} = 2$ . For an argument  $\theta$  of  $w$ ,  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{-1} = -\sqrt{3}$ . Since  $w$  lies in Quadrant II,  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3} + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$  and  $w = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$ .

Since we now have polar forms of  $z$  and  $w$ , we can now proceed using Theorem 1.5.

1. We get  $zw = \left(4\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)\right) \left(2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)\right) = 8\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6} + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = 8\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right) = 8\left[\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)\right]$ .

After simplifying, we get  $zw = -4\sqrt{3} + 4i$ .

2. We use DeMoivre's Theorem which yields  $w^5 = \left[2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)\right]^5 = 2^5\text{cis}\left(5 \cdot \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = 32\text{cis}\left(\frac{10\pi}{3}\right)$ .

Since  $\frac{10\pi}{3}$  is coterminal with  $\frac{4\pi}{3}$ , we get  $w^5 = 32\left[\cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right)\right] = -16 - 16i\sqrt{3}$ .

3. Last, but not least, we have  $\frac{z}{w} = \frac{4\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)}{2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)} = \frac{4}{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6} - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = 2\text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ .

Since  $-\frac{\pi}{2}$  is a quadrantal angle, we can 'see' the rectangular form by moving out 2 units along the positive real axis, then rotating  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  radians *clockwise* to arrive at the point 2 units below 0 on the imaginary axis. The long and short of it is that  $\frac{z}{w} = -2i$ .  $\square$

Some remarks are in order. First, the reader may not be sold on using the polar form of complex numbers to multiply complex numbers – especially if they aren't given in polar form to begin with.

Indeed, a lot of work was needed to convert the numbers  $z$  and  $w$  in Example 1.3.3 into polar form, compute their product, and convert back to rectangular form – certainly more work than is required to multiply out  $zw = (2\sqrt{3} + 2i)(-1 + i\sqrt{3})$  the old-fashioned way.

However, Theorem 1.5 pays huge dividends when computing powers of complex numbers. Consider how we computed  $w^5$  above and compare that to using the Binomial Theorem, Theorem ??, to accomplish the same feat by expanding  $(-1 + i\sqrt{3})^5$ .

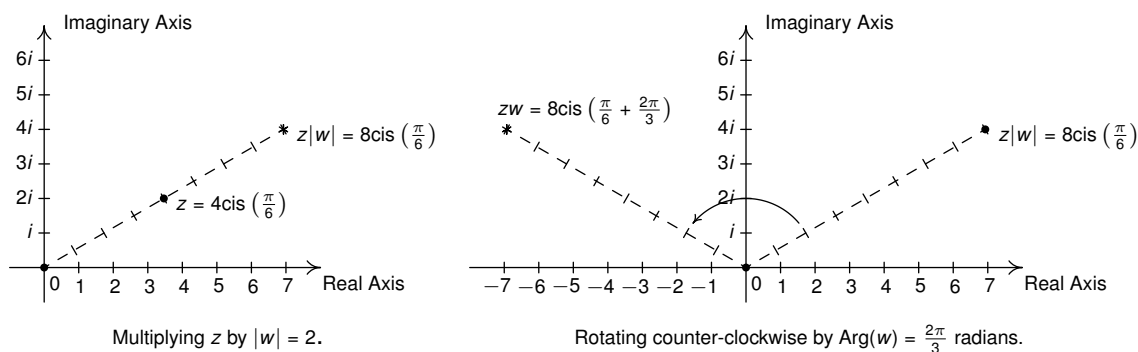
Moreover, division is tricky in the best of times, and we saved ourselves a lot of time and effort using Theorem 1.5 to find and simplify  $\frac{z}{w}$  using their polar forms as opposed to starting with  $\frac{2\sqrt{3}+2i}{-1+i\sqrt{3}}$ , rationalizing the denominator, and so forth.

There is geometric reason for studying these polar forms and we would be derelict in our duties if we did not mention the Geometry hidden in Theorem 1.5.

Take the product rule, for instance. If  $z = |z|\text{cis}(\alpha)$  and  $w = |w|\text{cis}(\beta)$ , the formula  $zw = |z||w|\text{cis}(\alpha + \beta)$  can be viewed geometrically as a two step process.

The multiplication of  $|z|$  by  $|w|$  can be interpreted as magnifying<sup>9</sup> the distance  $|z|$  from  $z$  to 0, by the factor  $|w|$ . Adding the argument of  $w$  to the argument of  $z$  can be interpreted geometrically as a rotation of  $\beta$  radians counter-clockwise.<sup>10</sup>

Focusing on  $z$  and  $w$  from Example 1.3.3, we can arrive at the product  $zw$  by plotting  $z$ , doubling its distance from 0 (since  $|w| = 2$ ), and rotating  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$  radians counter-clockwise. The sequence of diagrams below attempts to describe this process geometrically.



Visualizing  $zw$  for  $z = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$  and  $w = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$ .

We may also visualize division similarly. Here, the formula  $\frac{z}{w} = \frac{|z|}{|w|}\text{cis}(\alpha - \beta)$  may be interpreted as shrinking<sup>11</sup> the distance from 0 to  $z$  by the factor  $|w|$ , followed up by a *clockwise*<sup>12</sup> rotation of  $\beta$  radians.

In the case of  $z$  and  $w$  from Example 1.3.3, we arrive at  $\frac{z}{w}$  by first halving the distance from 0 to  $z$ , then rotating clockwise  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$  radians as shown below.

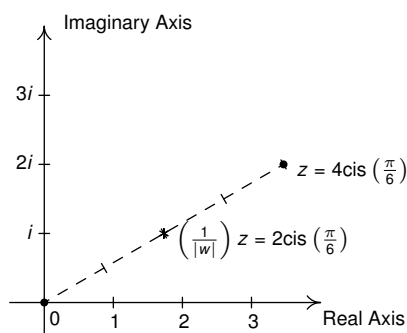
<sup>9</sup>Assuming  $|w| > 1$ .

<sup>10</sup>Assuming  $\beta > 0$ .

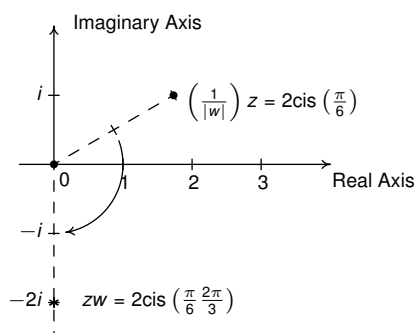
<sup>11</sup>Again, assuming  $|w| > 1$ .

<sup>12</sup>Again, assuming  $\beta > 0$ .

### 1.3. THE POLAR FORM OF COMPLEX NUMBERS COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS



Dividing  $z$  by  $|w| = 2$ .



Rotating clockwise by  $\text{Arg}(w) = \frac{2\pi}{3}$  radians.

Visualizing  $\frac{z}{w}$  for  $z = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$  and  $w = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$ .

Our last goal of the section is to reverse DeMoivre's Theorem to extract roots of complex numbers.

**Definition 1.3.** Let  $z$  and  $w$  be complex numbers. If there is a natural number  $n$  such that  $w^n = z$ , then  $w$  is an  $n^{\text{th}}$  root of  $z$ .

Unlike Definition ?? in Section ??, we do not specify one particular *principal*  $n^{\text{th}}$  root, hence the use of the indefinite article 'an' as in 'an  $n^{\text{th}}$  root of  $z$ '. Using this definition, both 4 and  $-4$  are square roots of 16, while  $\sqrt{16}$  means the principal square root of 16 as in  $\sqrt{16} = 4$ .

Suppose we wish to find all complex third (cube) roots of 8. Algebraically, we are trying to solve  $w^3 = 8$ . We know that there is only one *real* solution to this equation, namely  $w = \sqrt[3]{8} = 2$ , but if we take the time to rewrite this equation as  $w^3 - 8 = 0$  and factor, we get  $(w - 2)(w^2 + 2w + 4) = 0$ .

Solving  $w^2 + 2w + 4 = 0$  gives two more cube roots  $w = -1 \pm i\sqrt{3}$ , for a total of three cube roots of 8. Per Theorem ??, since the degree of  $p(w) = w^3 - 8$  is three, there are three complex zeros, counting multiplicity. Since we have found three distinct zeros, we know we have found *all* of the zeros, so there are *exactly three distinct* cube roots of 8.

Let us now solve this same problem using the machinery developed in this section. To do so, we express  $z = 8$  in polar form. Since  $z = 8$  lies 8 units away on the positive real axis, we get  $z = 8\text{cis}(0)$ . If we let  $w = |w|\text{cis}(\alpha)$  be a polar form of  $w$ , the equation  $w^3 = 8$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned} w^3 &= 8 \\ (|w|\text{cis}(\alpha))^3 &= 8\text{cis}(0) \\ |w|^3\text{cis}(3\alpha) &= 8\text{cis}(0) \quad \text{DeMoivre's Theorem} \end{aligned}$$

The complex number on the left hand side of the equation corresponds to the point with polar coordinates  $(|w|^3, 3\alpha)$ , while the complex number on the right hand side corresponds to the point with polar coordinates  $(8, 0)$ . Since  $|w| \geq 0$ , so is  $|w|^3$ , which means  $(|w|^3, 3\alpha)$  and  $(8, 0)$  are two polar representations corresponding to the same complex number, both with positive  $r$  values.

From Section 1.1, we know  $|w|^3 = 8$  and  $3\alpha = 0 + 2\pi k$  for integers  $k$ . Since  $|w|$  is a real number, we solve  $|w|^3 = 8$  by extracting the principal cube root to get  $|w| = \sqrt[3]{8} = 2$ .

As for  $\alpha$ , we get  $\alpha = \frac{2\pi k}{3}$  for integers  $k$ . This produces three distinct points with polar coordinates corresponding to  $k = 0, 1$  and  $2$ : specifically  $(2, 0)$ ,  $(2, \frac{2\pi}{3})$  and  $(2, \frac{4\pi}{3})$ .

The point  $(2, 0)$  corresponds to the complex number  $w_0 = 2\text{cis}(0)$ , the point  $(2, \frac{2\pi}{3})$  corresponds to the complex number  $w_1 = 2\text{cis}(\frac{2\pi}{3})$ , and the point  $(2, \frac{4\pi}{3})$  corresponds to the complex number  $w_2 = 2\text{cis}(\frac{4\pi}{3})$ . Converting to rectangular form, we find  $w_0 = 2$ ,  $w_1 = -1 + i\sqrt{3}$  and  $w_2 = -1 - i\sqrt{3}$ .

While this process seems a tad more involved than our previous factoring approach, this procedure can be generalized to find, for example, all of the fifth roots of 32. (Try using Chapter ?? techniques on that!)

If we start with a generic complex number in polar form  $z = |z|\text{cis}(\theta)$  and solve  $w^n = z$  in the same manner as above, we arrive at the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.6. The  $n^{\text{th}}$  roots of a Complex Number:**

Let  $z \neq 0$  be a complex number with polar form  $z = r\text{cis}(\theta)$ . For each natural number  $n$ ,  $z$  has  $n$  distinct  $n^{\text{th}}$  roots, which we denote by  $w_0, w_1, \dots, w_{n-1}$ , and they are given by the formula

$$w_k = \sqrt[n]{r}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\theta}{n} + \frac{2\pi}{n}k\right)$$

The proof of Theorem 1.6 breaks into two parts: first, showing that each  $w_k$  is an  $n^{\text{th}}$  root, and second, showing that the set  $\{w_k \mid k = 0, 1, \dots, (n-1)\}$  consists of  $n$  different complex numbers.

To show  $w_k$  is an  $n^{\text{th}}$  root of  $z$ , we use DeMoivre's Theorem to show  $(w_k)^n = z$ .

$$\begin{aligned} (w_k)^n &= \left(\sqrt[n]{r}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\theta}{n} + \frac{2\pi}{n}k\right)\right)^n \\ &= (\sqrt[n]{r})^n \text{cis}\left(n \cdot \left[\frac{\theta}{n} + \frac{2\pi}{n}k\right]\right) \quad \text{DeMoivre's Theorem} \\ &= r\text{cis}(\theta + 2\pi k) \end{aligned}$$

Since  $k$  is a whole number,  $\cos(\theta + 2\pi k) = \cos(\theta)$  and  $\sin(\theta + 2\pi k) = \sin(\theta)$ . Hence, it follows that  $\text{cis}(\theta + 2\pi k) = \text{cis}(\theta)$ , so  $(w_k)^n = r\text{cis}(\theta) = z$ , as required.

To show that the formula in Theorem 1.6 generates  $n$  distinct numbers, we assume  $n \geq 2$  (or else there is nothing to prove) and note that the modulus of each of the  $w_k$  is the same, namely  $\sqrt[n]{r}$ .

Therefore, the only way any two of these polar forms correspond to the same number is if their arguments are coterminal – that is, if the arguments differ by an integer multiple of  $2\pi$ .

Suppose  $k$  and  $j$  are whole numbers between 0 and  $(n-1)$ , inclusive, with  $k \neq j$ . Since  $k$  and  $j$  are different, let's assume for the sake of argument that  $k > j$ . Then  $\left(\frac{\theta}{n} + \frac{2\pi}{n}k\right) - \left(\frac{\theta}{n} + \frac{2\pi}{n}j\right) = 2\pi\left(\frac{k-j}{n}\right)$ .

For  $2\pi\left(\frac{k-j}{n}\right)$  to be an integer multiple of  $2\pi$ ,  $(k-j)$  must be a multiple of  $n$ . But because of the restrictions on  $k$  and  $j$ ,  $0 < k-j \leq n-1$ . (Think this through.) Hence,  $(k-j)$  is a positive number less than  $n$ , so it cannot be a multiple of  $n$ .

As a result,  $w_k$  and  $w_j$  are different complex numbers, and we are done. By Theorem ??, we know there at most  $n$  distinct solutions to  $w^n = z$ , and we have just found all  $n$  of them.

We illustrate Theorem 1.6 in the next example.

**Example 1.3.4.** Use Theorem 1.6 to find the following:

1. both square roots of  $z = -2 + 2i\sqrt{3}$
2. the four fourth roots of  $z = -16$
3. the three cube roots of  $z = \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$
4. the five fifth roots of  $z = 1$ .

**Solution.**

1. We start by writing  $z = -2 + 2i\sqrt{3}$  in polar form as  $z = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$ . Since we are looking for *square* roots,  $n = 2$ . In keeping with the notation used in Theorem 1.6 we will call these roots  $w_0$  and  $w_1$ , in keeping with the notation suggested there.

Identifying  $r = 4$ ,  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$ , Theorem 1.6 gives one root as  $w_0 = \sqrt{4}\text{cis}\left(\frac{(2\pi/3)}{2} + \frac{2\pi}{2}(0)\right) = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$  and the other root as  $w_1 = \sqrt{4}\text{cis}\left(\frac{(2\pi/3)}{2} + \frac{2\pi}{2}(1)\right) = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$ .

Though not asked to do so, we can easily convert each of  $w_0$  and  $w_1$  to rectangular form:  $w_0 = 1 + i\sqrt{3}$  and  $w_1 = -1 - i\sqrt{3}$ . We can check our answers by showing  $w_0^2 = -2 + 2i\sqrt{3}$  and  $w_1^2 = -2 + 2i\sqrt{3}$ .

2. Proceeding as above, we begin by converting  $z$  to polar form:  $z = -16 = 16\text{cis}(\pi)$ . Here,  $n = 4$ , so Theorem 1.6 guarantees us *four* fourth roots.

Identifying  $r = 16$ ,  $\theta = \pi$  and  $n = 4$ , Theorem 1.6 gives us:  $w_0 = \sqrt[4]{16}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{2\pi}{4}(0)\right) = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ ,  $w_1 = \sqrt[4]{16}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{2\pi}{4}(1)\right) = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$ ,  $w_2 = \sqrt[4]{16}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{2\pi}{4}(2)\right) = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$  and last, but not least,  $w_3 = \sqrt[4]{16}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{2\pi}{4}(3)\right) = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$ .

Once again, we can conveniently convert our answers to rectangular form. We get:  $w_0 = \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$ ,  $w_1 = -\sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$ ,  $w_2 = -\sqrt{2} - i\sqrt{2}$  and  $w_3 = \sqrt{2} - i\sqrt{2}$ . We invite the reader to check our answers algebraically by showing  $w_0^4 = w_1^4 = w_2^4 = w_3^4 = -16$ .

3. For  $z = \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$ , we have  $z = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ . With  $r = 2$ ,  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$  and  $n = 3$  the usual computations yield  $w_0 = \sqrt[3]{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{12}\right)$ ,  $w_1 = \sqrt[3]{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{9\pi}{12}\right) = \sqrt[3]{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$  and  $w_2 = \sqrt[3]{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{17\pi}{12}\right)$ .

To convert our answers to rectangular form requires the use of either the Sum and Difference Identities in Theorem ?? or the Half-Angle Identities in Theorem ?? to evaluate  $w_0$  and  $w_2$ . Since we are not explicitly told to do so, we leave this as a good, but messy, exercise.

4. To find the five fifth roots of 1, we write  $1 = 1\text{cis}(0)$ . We have  $r = 1$ ,  $\theta = 0$  and  $n = 5$ . Since  $\sqrt[5]{1} = 1$ , the roots are  $w_0 = \text{cis}(0) = 1$ ,  $w_1 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right)$ ,  $w_2 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right)$ ,  $w_3 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{5}\right)$  and  $w_4 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{5}\right)$ .

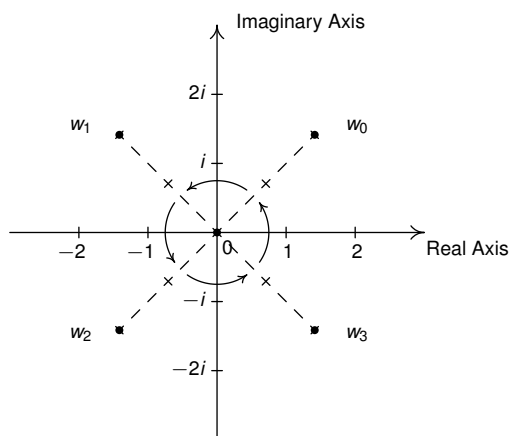
The situation here is even graver than in the previous example, since we have not developed any identities to help us determine the cosine or sine of  $\frac{2\pi}{5}$ . At this stage, we could approximate our answers using a calculator, and we leave this as an exercise.  $\square$

Having done some computations with Theorem 1.6, it's time to take a step back to look at things geometrically.

Essentially, Theorem 1.6 says that to find the  $n^{\text{th}}$  roots of a complex number, we first take the  $n^{\text{th}}$  root of the modulus and divide the argument by  $n$ . This gives the first root  $w_0$ .

Each successive root is found by adding  $\frac{2\pi}{n}$  to the argument, which amounts to rotating  $w_0$  by  $\frac{2\pi}{n}$  radians. The result of these actions produces  $n$  roots, spaced equally around the complex plane.

As an example of this, we plot our answers to number 2 in Example 1.3.4 below.



The four fourth roots of  $z = -16$  equally spaced  $\frac{2\pi}{4} = \frac{\pi}{2}$  around the plane.

We have only glimpsed at the beauty of the complex numbers in this section. The complex plane is without a doubt one of the most important mathematical constructs ever devised. Coupled with Calculus, it is the venue for incredibly important Science and Engineering applications.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>13</sup>For more on this, see the beautifully written epilogue to Section ?? found on page ??.

### 1.3.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1 - 20, find a polar representation for the complex number  $z$ . Identify  $\text{Re}(z)$ ,  $\text{Im}(z)$ ,  $|z|$ ,  $\arg(z)$  and  $\text{Arg}(z)$ .

- |                          |                                  |   |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. $z = 9 + 9i$          | 2. $z = 5 + 5i\sqrt{3}$          | 3. $z = 6i$                                 | 4. $z = -3\sqrt{2} + 3i\sqrt{2}$ |
| 5. $z = -6\sqrt{3} + 6i$ | 6. $z = -2$                      | 7. $z = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}i$ | 8. $z = -3 - 3i$                 |
| 9. $z = -5i$             | 10. $z = 2\sqrt{2} - 2i\sqrt{2}$ | 11. $z = 6$                                 | 12. $z = i\sqrt[3]{7}$           |
| 13. $z = 3 + 4i$         | 14. $z = \sqrt{2} + i$           | 15. $z = -7 + 24i$                          | 16. $z = -2 + 6i$                |
| 17. $z = -12 - 5i$       | 18. $z = -5 - 2i$                | 19. $z = 4 - 2i$                            | 20. $z = 1 - 3i$                 |

In Exercises 21 - 40, find the rectangular form of the given complex number. Use whatever identities are necessary to find the exact values.

- |   |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|---|
| 21. $z = 6\text{cis}(0)$  | 22. $z = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$          | 23. $z = 7\sqrt{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$                            | 24. $z = 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$   |
| 25. $z = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$                          | 26. $z = \sqrt{6}\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$  | 27. $z = 9\text{cis}(\pi)$   | 28. $z = 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$  |
| 29. $z = 7\text{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$                         | 30. $z = \sqrt{13}\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ | 31. $z = \frac{1}{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$                         | 32. $z = 12\text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ |
| 33. $z = 8\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{12}\right)$                          |  | 34. $z = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{8}\right)$                                   |   |
| 35. $z = 5\text{cis}\left(\arctan\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\right)$         |  | 36. $z = \sqrt{10}\text{cis}\left(\arctan\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)\right)$          |   |
| 37. $z = 15\text{cis}(\arctan(-2))$                                       |  | 38. $z = \sqrt{3}(\arctan(-\sqrt{2}))$   |   |
| 39. $z = 50\text{cis}\left(\pi - \arctan\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)\right)$ |  | 40. $z = \frac{1}{2}\text{cis}\left(\pi + \arctan\left(\frac{5}{12}\right)\right)$ |   |

For Exercises 41 - 52, use  $z = -\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i$  and  $w = 3\sqrt{2} - 3i\sqrt{2}$  to compute the quantity. Express your answers in polar form using the principal argument.

- |           |                   |                   |                     |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 41. $zw$  | 42. $\frac{z}{w}$ | 43. $\frac{w}{z}$ | 44. $z^4$           |
| 45. $w^3$ | 46. $z^5 w^2$     | 47. $z^3 w^2$     | 48. $\frac{z^2}{w}$ |



49.  $\frac{w}{z^2}$

50.  $\frac{z^3}{w^2}$

51.  $\frac{w^2}{z^3}$

52.  $\left(\frac{w}{z}\right)^6$

In Exercises 53 - 64, use DeMoivre's Theorem to find the indicated power of the given complex number. Express your final answers in rectangular form.

53.  $(-2 + 2i\sqrt{3})^3$

54.  $(-\sqrt{3} - i)^3$

55.  $(-3 + 3i)^4$

56.  $(\sqrt{3} + i)^4$

57.  $\left(\frac{5}{2} + \frac{5}{2}i\right)^3$

58.  $\left(-\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}i\right)^6$

59.  $\left(\frac{3}{2} - \frac{3}{2}i\right)^3$

60.  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} - \frac{1}{3}i\right)^4$

61.  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\right)^4$

62.  $(2 + 2i)^5$

63.  $(\sqrt{3} - i)^5$

64.  $(1 - i)^8$

In Exercises 65 - 76, find the indicated complex roots. Express your answers in polar form and then convert them into rectangular form.

65. the two square roots of  $z = 4i$

66. the two square roots of  $z = -25i$

67. the two square roots of  $z = 1 + i\sqrt{3}$

68. the two square roots of  $\frac{5}{2} - \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}i$

69. the three cube roots of  $z = 64$

70. the three cube roots of  $z = -125$

71. the three cube roots of  $z = i$

72. the three cube roots of  $z = -8i$

73. the four fourth roots of  $z = 16$

74. the four fourth roots of  $z = -81$

75. the six sixth roots of  $z = 64$

76. the six sixth roots of  $z = -729$

77. Use the Sum and Difference Identities in Theorem ?? or the Half Angle Identities in Theorem ?? to convert the three cube roots of  $z = \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$  we found in Example 1.3.4, number 3 from polar form to rectangular form.

78. Use a calculator to approximate the rectangular form of the five fifth roots of 1 we found in Example 1.3.4, number 4.

79. According to Theorem ?? in Section ??, the polynomial  $p(x) = x^4 + 4$  can be factored into the product linear and irreducible quadratic factors. In Exercise ?? in Section ??, we showed you how to factor this polynomial into the product of two irreducible quadratic factors using a system of non-linear equations. Now that we can compute the complex fourth roots of  $-4$  directly using Theorem 1.6, we can apply the Complex Factorization Theorem, Theorem ??, to obtain the linear factorization  $p(x) = (x - (1+i))(x - (1-i))(x - (-1+i))(x - (-1-i))$ . By multiplying the first two factors together and then the second two factors together, thus pairing up the complex conjugate pairs of zeros Theorem ?? told us we'd get, we have that  $p(x) = (x^2 - 2x + 2)(x^2 + 2x + 2)$ . Use the 12 complex 12<sup>th</sup> roots of 4096 to factor  $p(x) = x^{12} - 4096$  into a product of linear and irreducible quadratic factors.

### 1.3. THE POLAR FORM OF COMPLEX NUMBERS COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

80. Use Exercise ?? from Section ?? to show the Triangle Inequality  $|z + w| \leq |z| + |w|$  holds for all complex numbers  $z$  and  $w$  as well. Identify the complex number  $z = a + bi$  with the vector  $u = \langle a, b \rangle$  and identify the complex number  $w = c + di$  with the vector  $v = \langle c, d \rangle$  and just follow your nose!
81. Complete the proof of Theorem 1.3 by showing that if  $w \neq 0$  then  $\left|\frac{1}{w}\right| = \frac{1}{|w|}$ .
82. Recall from Section ?? that given a complex number  $z = a + bi$  its complex conjugate, denoted  $\bar{z}$ , is given by  $\bar{z} = a - bi$ .
- Prove that  $|\bar{z}| = |z|$ .
  - Prove that  $|z| = \sqrt{z\bar{z}}$ .
  - Show that  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = \frac{z + \bar{z}}{2}$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(z) = \frac{z - \bar{z}}{2i}$ .
  - Show that if  $\theta \in \arg(z)$  then  $-\theta \in \arg(\bar{z})$ . Interpret this result geometrically.
  - Is it always true that  $\operatorname{Arg}(\bar{z}) = -\operatorname{Arg}(z)$ ?
83. Given a natural number  $n \geq 2$ , the  $n$  complex  $n^{\text{th}}$  roots of  $z = 1$  are called the  **$n^{\text{th}}$  Roots of Unity**. In the following exercises, assume that  $n$  is a fixed, but arbitrary, natural number such that  $n \geq 2$ .
- Show that  $w = 1$  is an  $n^{\text{th}}$  root of unity.
  - Show that if both  $w_j$  and  $w_k$  are  $n^{\text{th}}$  roots of unity then so is their product  $w_j w_k$ .
  - Show that if  $w_j$  is an  $n^{\text{th}}$  root of unity then there is an  $n^{\text{th}}$  root of unity  $w_{j'}$  so that  $w_j w_{j'} = 1$ .  
HINT: If  $w_j = \operatorname{cis}(\theta)$  let  $w_{j'} = \operatorname{cis}(2\pi - \theta)$ . Show  $w_{j'} = \operatorname{cis}(2\pi - \theta)$  is indeed an  $n^{\text{th}}$  root of unity.
84. Another way to express the polar form of a complex number is to use the exponential function. For real numbers  $t$ , Euler's Formula defines  $e^{it} = \cos(t) + i \sin(t)$ .
- Use Theorem 1.5 to show that:
    - $e^{ix} e^{iy} = e^{i(x+y)}$  for all real numbers  $x$  and  $y$ .
    - $(e^{ix})^n = e^{i(nx)}$  for any real number  $x$  and any natural number  $n$ .
    - $\frac{e^{ix}}{e^{iy}} = e^{i(x-y)}$  for all real numbers  $x$  and  $y$ .
  - If  $z = r \operatorname{cis}(\theta)$  is the polar form of  $z$ , show that  $z = r e^{it}$  where  $\theta = t$  radians.
  - Show that  $e^{i\pi} + 1 = 0$ . (This famous equation relates the five most important constants in all of Mathematics with the three most fundamental operations in Mathematics.)
  - Show that  $\cos(t) = \frac{e^{it} + e^{-it}}{2}$  and that  $\sin(t) = \frac{e^{it} - e^{-it}}{2i}$  for all real numbers  $t$ .

### 1.3.2 Answers

1.  $z = 9 + 9i = 9\sqrt{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 9$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 9$ ,  $|z| = 9\sqrt{2}$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{\pi}{4} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .
2.  $z = 5 + 5i\sqrt{3} = 10\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 5$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 5\sqrt{3}$ ,  $|z| = 10$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{\pi}{3} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \frac{\pi}{3}$ .
3.  $z = 6i = 6\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 0$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 6$ ,  $|z| = 6$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .
4.  $z = -3\sqrt{2} + 3i\sqrt{2} = 6\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -3\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 3\sqrt{2}$ ,  $|z| = 6$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{3\pi}{4} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \frac{3\pi}{4}$ .
5.  $z = -6\sqrt{3} + 6i = 12\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -6\sqrt{3}$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 6$ ,  $|z| = 12$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{5\pi}{6} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \frac{5\pi}{6}$ .
6.  $z = -2 = 2\text{cis}(\pi)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -2$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 0$ ,  $|z| = 2$   
 $\arg(z) = \{(2k + 1)\pi \mid k \text{ is an integer}\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \pi$ .
7.  $z = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}i = \text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = -\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $|z| = 1$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{7\pi}{6} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = -\frac{5\pi}{6}$ .
8.  $z = -3 - 3i = 3\sqrt{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -3$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = -3$ ,  $|z| = 3\sqrt{2}$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{5\pi}{4} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = -\frac{3\pi}{4}$ .
9.  $z = -5i = 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 0$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = -5$ ,  $|z| = 5$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{3\pi}{2} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = -\frac{\pi}{2}$ .
10.  $z = 2\sqrt{2} - 2i\sqrt{2} = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 2\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = -2\sqrt{2}$ ,  $|z| = 4$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{7\pi}{4} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = -\frac{\pi}{4}$ .
11.  $z = 6 = 6\text{cis}(0)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 6$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 0$ ,  $|z| = 6$   
 $\arg(z) = \{2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = 0$ .
12.  $z = i\sqrt[3]{7} = \sqrt[3]{7}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 0$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = \sqrt[3]{7}$ ,  $|z| = \sqrt[3]{7}$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .
13.  $z = 3 + 4i = 5\text{cis}\left(\arctan\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 3$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 4$ ,  $|z| = 5$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\arctan\left(\frac{4}{3}\right) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \arctan\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)$ .

### 1.3. THE POLAR FORM OF COMPLEX NUMBERS COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

14.  $z = \sqrt{2} + i = \sqrt{3}\text{cis}\left(\arctan\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = \sqrt{2}$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 1$ ,  $|z| = \sqrt{3}$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\arctan\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \arctan\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$ .
15.  $z = -7 + 24i = 25\text{cis}\left(\pi - \arctan\left(\frac{24}{7}\right)\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -7$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 24$ ,  $|z| = 25$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\pi - \arctan\left(\frac{24}{7}\right) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \pi - \arctan\left(\frac{24}{7}\right)$ .
16.  $z = -2 + 6i = 2\sqrt{10}\text{cis}\left(\pi - \arctan(3)\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -2$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = 6$ ,  $|z| = 2\sqrt{10}$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\pi - \arctan(3) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \pi - \arctan(3)$ .
17.  $z = -12 - 5i = 13\text{cis}\left(\pi + \arctan\left(\frac{5}{12}\right)\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -12$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = -5$ ,  $|z| = 13$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\pi + \arctan\left(\frac{5}{12}\right) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \arctan\left(\frac{5}{12}\right) - \pi$ .
18.  $z = -5 - 2i = \sqrt{29}\text{cis}\left(\pi + \arctan\left(\frac{2}{5}\right)\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = -5$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = -2$ ,  $|z| = \sqrt{29}$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\pi + \arctan\left(\frac{2}{5}\right) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \arctan\left(\frac{2}{5}\right) - \pi$ .
19.  $z = 4 - 2i = 2\sqrt{5}\text{cis}\left(\arctan\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 4$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = -2$ ,  $|z| = 2\sqrt{5}$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\arctan\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \arctan\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = -\arctan\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ .
20.  $z = 1 - 3i = \sqrt{10}\text{cis}\left(\arctan(-3)\right)$ ,  $\text{Re}(z) = 1$ ,  $\text{Im}(z) = -3$ ,  $|z| = \sqrt{10}$   
 $\arg(z) = \left\{\arctan(-3) + 2\pi k \mid k \text{ is an integer}\right\}$  and  $\text{Arg}(z) = \arctan(-3) = -\arctan(3)$ .
21.  $z = 6\text{cis}(0) = 6$
22.  $z = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) = \sqrt{3} + i$
23.  $z = 7\sqrt{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 7 + 7i$
24.  $z = 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 3i$
25.  $z = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = -2 + 2i\sqrt{3}$
26.  $z = \sqrt{6}\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) = -\sqrt{3} + i\sqrt{3}$
27.  $z = 9\text{cis}(\pi) = -9$
28.  $z = 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right) = -\frac{3}{2} - \frac{3i\sqrt{3}}{2}$
29.  $z = 7\text{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) = -\frac{7\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{7\sqrt{2}}{2}i$
30.  $z = \sqrt{13}\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = -i\sqrt{13}$
31.  $z = \frac{1}{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} - i\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$
32.  $z = 12\text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = 6 - 6i\sqrt{3}$
33.  $z = 8\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{12}\right) = 4\sqrt{2 + \sqrt{3}} + 4i\sqrt{2 - \sqrt{3}}$
34.  $z = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{8}\right) = -\sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2}} + i\sqrt{2 - \sqrt{2}}$
35.  $z = 5\text{cis}\left(\arctan\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\right) = 3 + 4i$
36.  $z = \sqrt{10}\text{cis}\left(\arctan\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)\right) = 3 + i$
37.  $z = 15\text{cis}\left(\arctan(-2)\right) = 3\sqrt{5} - 6i\sqrt{5}$
38.  $z = \sqrt{3}\text{cis}\left(\arctan(-\sqrt{2})\right) = 1 - i\sqrt{2}$
39.  $z = 50\text{cis}\left(\pi - \arctan\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)\right) = -48 + 14i$
40.  $z = \frac{1}{2}\text{cis}\left(\pi + \arctan\left(\frac{5}{12}\right)\right) = -\frac{6}{13} - \frac{5i}{26}$

In Exercises 41 - 52, we have that  $z = -\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i = 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$  and  $w = 3\sqrt{2} - 3i\sqrt{2} = 6\text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$  so we get the following.

$$41. zw = 18\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{12}\right)$$

$$42. \frac{z}{w} = \frac{1}{2}\text{cis}\left(-\frac{11\pi}{12}\right)$$

$$43. \frac{w}{z} = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{11\pi}{12}\right)$$

$$44. z^4 = 81\text{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$45. w^3 = 216\text{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$$

$$46. z^5 w^2 = 8748\text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$47. z^3 w^2 = 972\text{cis}(0)$$

$$48. \frac{z^2}{w} = \frac{3}{2}\text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{12}\right)$$

$$49. \frac{w}{z^2} = \frac{2}{3}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{12}\right)$$

$$50. \frac{z^3}{w^2} = \frac{3}{4}\text{cis}(\pi)$$

$$51. \frac{w^2}{z^3} = \frac{4}{3}\text{cis}(\pi)$$

$$52. \left(\frac{w}{z}\right)^6 = 64\text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

$$53. (-2 + 2i\sqrt{3})^3 = 64$$

$$54. (-\sqrt{3} - i)^3 = -8i$$

$$55. (-3 + 3i)^4 = -324$$

$$56. (\sqrt{3} + i)^4 = -8 + 8i\sqrt{3}$$

$$57. \left(\frac{5}{2} + \frac{5}{2}i\right)^3 = -\frac{125}{4} + \frac{125}{4}i$$

$$58. \left(-\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^6 = 1$$

$$59. \left(\frac{3}{2} - \frac{3}{2}i\right)^3 = -\frac{27}{4} - \frac{27}{4}i$$

$$60. \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} - \frac{1}{3}i\right)^4 = -\frac{8}{81} - \frac{8i\sqrt{3}}{81}$$

$$61. \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\right)^4 = -1$$

$$62. (2 + 2i)^5 = -128 - 128i$$

$$63. (\sqrt{3} - i)^5 = -16\sqrt{3} - 16i$$

$$64. (1 - i)^8 = 16$$

65. Since  $z = 4i = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$  we have

$$w_0 = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{2}$$

$$w_1 = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right) = -\sqrt{2} - i\sqrt{2}$$

66. Since  $z = -25i = 25\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$  we have

$$w_0 = 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) = -\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}i$$

$$w_1 = 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}i$$

67. Since  $z = 1 + i\sqrt{3} = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$  we have

$$w_0 = \sqrt{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{6}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i$$

$$w_1 = \sqrt{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{6}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{6}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i$$

68. Since  $z = \frac{5}{2} - \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}i = 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{3}\right)$  we have

$$w_0 = \sqrt{5}\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{15}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}i$$

$$w_1 = \sqrt{5}\text{cis}\left(\frac{11\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{15}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}i$$

69. Since  $z = 64 = 64\text{cis}(0)$  we have

$$w_0 = 4\text{cis}(0) = 4$$

$$w_1 = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = -2 + 2i\sqrt{3}$$

$$w_2 = 4\text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right) = -2 - 2i\sqrt{3}$$

### 1.3. THE POLAR FORM OF COMPLEX NUMBERS COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

70. Since  $z = -125 = 125\text{cis}(\pi)$  we have

$$w_0 = 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{5}{2} + \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}i \quad w_1 = 5\text{cis}(\pi) = -5 \quad w_2 = 5\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{5}{2} - \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}i$$

71. Since  $z = i = \text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$  we have

$$w_0 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}i \quad w_1 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}i \quad w_2 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = -i$$

72. Since  $z = -8i = 8\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$  we have

$$w_0 = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 2i \quad w_1 = 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{6}\right) = -\sqrt{3} - i \quad w_2 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{11\pi}{6}\right) = \sqrt{3} - i$$

73. Since  $z = 16 = 16\text{cis}(0)$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= 2\text{cis}(0) = 2 & w_1 &= 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 2i \\ w_2 &= 2\text{cis}(\pi) = -2 & w_3 &= 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = -2i \end{aligned}$$

74. Since  $z = -81 = 81\text{cis}(\pi)$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}i & w_1 &= 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) = -\frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}i \\ w_2 &= 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right) = -\frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}i & w_3 &= 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}i \end{aligned}$$

75. Since  $z = 64 = 64\text{cis}(0)$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= 2\text{cis}(0) = 2 & w_1 &= 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = 1 + \sqrt{3}i & w_2 &= 2\text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = -1 + \sqrt{3}i \\ w_3 &= 2\text{cis}(\pi) = -2 & w_4 &= 2\text{cis}\left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = -1 - \sqrt{3}i & w_5 &= 2\text{cis}\left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = 1 - \sqrt{3}i \end{aligned}$$

76. Since  $z = -729 = 729\text{cis}(\pi)$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i & w_1 &= 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 3i & w_2 &= 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right) = -\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i \\ w_3 &= 3\text{cis}\left(\frac{7\pi}{6}\right) = -\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{3}{2}i & w_4 &= 3\text{cis}\left(-\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = -3i & w_5 &= 3\text{cis}\left(-\frac{11\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{3}{2}i \end{aligned}$$

77. Note: In the answers for  $w_0$  and  $w_2$  the first rectangular form comes from applying the appropriate Sum or Difference Identity ( $\frac{\pi}{12} = \frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{4}$  and  $\frac{17\pi}{12} = \frac{2\pi}{3} + \frac{3\pi}{4}$ , respectively) and the second comes from using the Half-Angle Identities.

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= \sqrt[3]{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{\pi}{12}\right) = \sqrt[3]{2}\left(\frac{\sqrt{6}+\sqrt{2}}{4} + i\left(\frac{\sqrt{6}-\sqrt{2}}{4}\right)\right) = \sqrt[3]{2}\left(\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2} + i\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2}\right) \\ w_1 &= \sqrt[3]{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) = \sqrt[3]{2}\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}i\right) \\ w_2 &= \sqrt[3]{2}\text{cis}\left(\frac{17\pi}{12}\right) = \sqrt[3]{2}\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}-\sqrt{6}}{4} + i\left(\frac{-\sqrt{2}-\sqrt{6}}{4}\right)\right) = \sqrt[3]{2}\left(\frac{\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}}}{2} + i\frac{\sqrt{2+\sqrt{3}}}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

78.  $w_0 = \text{cis}(0) = 1$

$$w_1 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{2\pi}{5}\right) \approx 0.309 + 0.951i$$

$$w_2 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{4\pi}{5}\right) \approx -0.809 + 0.588i$$

$$w_3 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{6\pi}{5}\right) \approx -0.809 - 0.588i$$

$$w_4 = \text{cis}\left(\frac{8\pi}{5}\right) \approx 0.309 - 0.951i$$

79.  $p(x) = x^{12} - 4096 = (x - 2)(x + 2)(x^2 + 4)(x^2 - 2x + 4)(x^2 + 2x + 4)(x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}x + 4)(x^2 + 2\sqrt{3}x + 4)$

## 1.4 The Polar Form of the Conic Sections

In this section, we revisit our friends the Conic Sections which we began studying in Chapter ???. Our first task is to formalize the notion of rotating axes so this subsection is actually a follow-up to Example ?? in Section ??. In that example, we saw that the graph of  $y = \frac{2}{x}$  is actually a hyperbola.

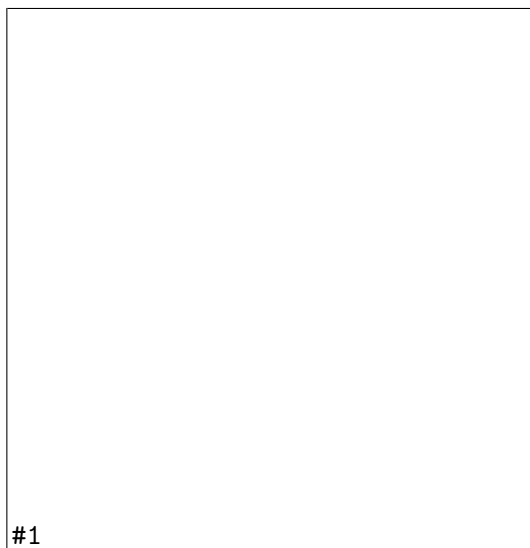
More specifically, the graph of  $y = \frac{1}{x}$  is the hyperbola obtained by rotating the graph of  $x^2 - y^2 = 4$  counter-clockwise through a  $45^\circ$  angle. Armed with polar coordinates, we can generalize the process of rotating axes as shown below.

### 1.4.1 Rotation of Axes

Consider the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axes below along with the dashed  $x'$ - and  $y'$ -axes obtained by rotating the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axes counter-clockwise through an angle  $\theta$  and consider the point  $P(x, y)$ . The coordinates  $(x, y)$  are rectangular coordinates and are based on the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axes.

Suppose we wished to find rectangular coordinates based on the  $x'$ - and  $y'$ -axes. That is, we wish to determine  $P(x', y')$ . While this seems like a formidable challenge, it is nearly trivial if we use polar coordinates.

Consider the angle  $\phi$  whose initial side is the positive  $x'$ -axis and whose terminal side contains the point  $P$ . We relate  $P(x, y)$  and  $P(x', y')$  by converting them to polar coordinates.



Converting  $P(x, y)$  to polar coordinates with  $r > 0$  yields  $x = r \cos(\theta + \phi)$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta + \phi)$ . To convert the point  $P(x', y')$  into polar coordinates, we first match the polar axis with the positive  $x'$ -axis, choose the same  $r > 0$  (since the origin is the same in both systems) and get  $x' = r \cos(\phi)$  and  $y' = r \sin(\phi)$ .

Using the sum formulas for sine and cosine, we have



$$\begin{aligned}
 x &= r \cos(\theta + \phi) \\
 &= r \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) - r \sin(\theta) \sin(\phi) && \text{Sum formula for cosine} \\
 &= (r \cos(\phi)) \cos(\theta) - (r \sin(\phi)) \sin(\theta) \\
 &= x' \cos(\theta) - y' \sin(\theta) && \text{Since } x' = r \cos(\phi) \text{ and } y' = r \sin(\phi)
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, using the sum formula for sine we get  $y = x' \sin(\theta) + y' \cos(\theta)$ . These equations enable us to easily convert points with  $x'y'$ -coordinates back into  $xy$ -coordinates. They also enable us to easily convert equations in the variables  $x$  and  $y$  into equations in the variables in terms of  $x'$  and  $y'$ .<sup>1</sup>

If we want equations which enable us to convert points with  $xy$ -coordinates into  $x'y'$ -coordinates, we need to solve the system

$$\begin{cases} x' \cos(\theta) - y' \sin(\theta) = x \\ x' \sin(\theta) + y' \cos(\theta) = y \end{cases}$$

for  $x'$  and  $y'$ . Perhaps the cleanest way<sup>2</sup> to solve this system is to write it as a matrix equation. Using the machinery developed in Section ??, we write the above system as the matrix equation  $AX' = X$  where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) \\ \sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) \end{bmatrix}, \quad X' = \begin{bmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{bmatrix}, \quad X = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$$

Since  $\det(A) = (\cos(\theta))(\cos(\theta)) - (-\sin(\theta))(\sin(\theta)) = \cos^2(\theta) + \sin^2(\theta) = 1$ , the determinant of  $A$  is not zero so  $A$  is invertible and  $X' = A^{-1}X$ . Using the formula given in Equation ?? with  $\det(A) = 1$ , we find

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & \sin(\theta) \\ -\sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) \end{bmatrix}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned}
 X' &= A^{-1}X \\
 \begin{bmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & \sin(\theta) \\ -\sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} \\
 \begin{bmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} x \cos(\theta) + y \sin(\theta) \\ -x \sin(\theta) + y \cos(\theta) \end{bmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

From which we get  $x' = x \cos(\theta) + y \sin(\theta)$  and  $y' = -x \sin(\theta) + y \cos(\theta)$ . To summarize,

<sup>1</sup>Just like in Section 1.1, the equations  $x = r \cos(\theta)$  and  $y = r \sin(\theta)$  make it easy to convert *points* from polar coordinates into rectangular coordinates, and they make it easy to convert *equations* from rectangular coordinates into polar coordinates.

<sup>2</sup>We could, of course, interchange the roles of  $x$  and  $x'$ ,  $y$  and  $y'$  and replace  $\phi$  with  $-\phi$  to get  $x'$  and  $y'$  in terms of  $x$  and  $y$ , but that seems like cheating. The matrix  $A$  introduced here is revisited in the Exercises.

**Theorem 1.7. Rotation of Axes:** Suppose the positive  $x$  and  $y$  axes are rotated counter-clockwise through an angle  $\theta$  to produce the axes  $x'$  and  $y'$ , respectively. Then the coordinates  $P(x, y)$  and  $P(x', y')$  are related by the following systems of equations

$$\begin{cases} x = x' \cos(\theta) - y' \sin(\theta) \\ y = x' \sin(\theta) + y' \cos(\theta) \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{cases} x' = x \cos(\theta) + y \sin(\theta) \\ y' = -x \sin(\theta) + y \cos(\theta) \end{cases}$$

We put the formulas in Theorem 1.7 to good use in the following example.

**Example 1.4.1.** Suppose the  $x$ - and  $y$ - axes are both rotated counter-clockwise through the angle  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$  to produce the  $x'$ - and  $y'$ - axes, respectively.

1. Let  $P(x, y) = (2, -4)$  and find  $P(x', y')$ . Check your answer algebraically and graphically.
2. Convert the equation  $21x^2 + 10xy\sqrt{3} + 31y^2 = 144$  to an equation in  $x'$  and  $y'$  and graph.

**Solution.**

1. If  $P(x, y) = (2, -4)$  then  $x = 2$  and  $y = -4$ . Using these values for  $x$  and  $y$  along with  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$ , Theorem 1.7 gives  $x' = x \cos(\theta) + y \sin(\theta) = 2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) + (-4) \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$  which simplifies to  $x' = 1 - 2\sqrt{3}$ .

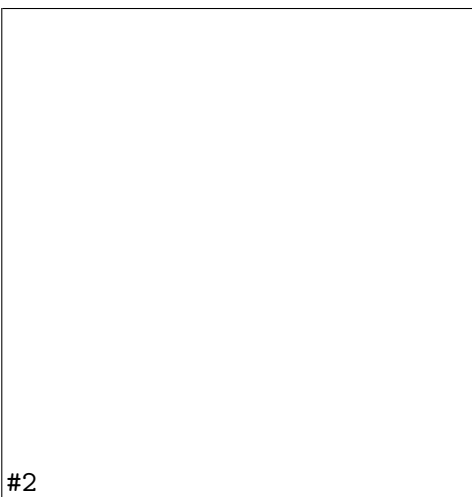
Similarly,  $y' = -x \sin(\theta) + y \cos(\theta) = (-2) \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) + (-4) \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$  which gives  $y' = -\sqrt{3} - 2 = -2 - \sqrt{3}$ . Hence  $P(x', y') = (1 - 2\sqrt{3}, -2 - \sqrt{3})$ .

To check our answer algebraically, we convert  $P(x', y') = (1 - 2\sqrt{3}, -2 - \sqrt{3})$  back into  $x$  and  $y$  coordinates using the formulas in Theorem 1.7. We get

$$\begin{aligned} x &= x' \cos(\theta) - y' \sin(\theta) \\ &= (1 - 2\sqrt{3}) \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) - (-2 - \sqrt{3}) \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{2} - \sqrt{3}\right) - (-\sqrt{3} - \frac{3}{2}) \\ &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, using  $y = x' \sin(\theta) + y' \cos(\theta)$ , we obtain  $y = -4$  as required.

To check our answer graphically, we sketch in the  $x'$ -axis and  $y'$ -axis to see if the new coordinates  $P(x', y') = (1 - 2\sqrt{3}, -2 - \sqrt{3}) \approx (-2.46, -3.73)$  seem reasonable. Our graph is below.



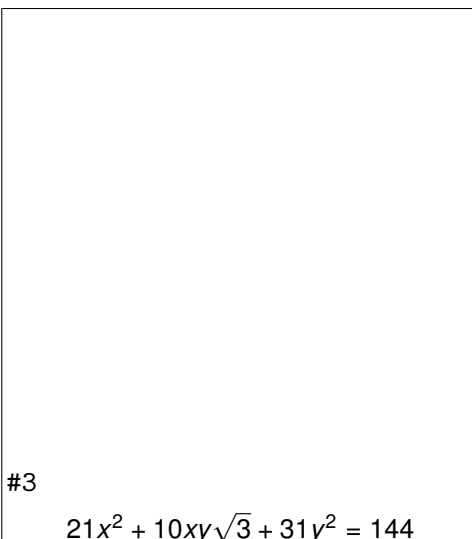
2. To convert the equation  $21x^2 + 10xy\sqrt{3} + 31y^2 = 144$  to an equation in the variables  $x'$  and  $y'$ , we substitute  $x = x' \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) - y' \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{x'}{2} - \frac{y'\sqrt{3}}{2}$  and  $y = x' \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) + y' \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{x'\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{y'}{2}$ .

While this is by no means a trivial task, it is nothing more than a hefty dose of Intermediate Algebra. While we leave most of the details to the reader, a good starting point is to verify:

$$x^2 = \frac{(x')^2}{4} - \frac{x'y'\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{3(y')^2}{4}, \quad xy = \frac{(x')^2\sqrt{3}}{4} - \frac{x'y'}{2} - \frac{(y')^2\sqrt{3}}{4}, \quad y^2 = \frac{3(x')^2}{4} + \frac{x'y'\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{(y')^2}{4}$$

To our surprise and delight, the equation  $21x^2 + 10xy\sqrt{3} + 31y^2 = 144$  in  $xy$ -coordinates reduces to  $36(x')^2 + 16(y')^2 = 144$ , or  $\frac{(x')^2}{4} + \frac{(y')^2}{9} = 1$  in  $x'y'$ -coordinates.

That is, the curve is an ellipse centered at  $(0, 0)$  with vertices along the  $y'$ -axis with  $(x'y'$ -coordinates)  $(0, \pm 3)$  and whose minor axis has endpoints with  $(x'y'$ -coordinates)  $(\pm 2, 0)$  as seen below.



#3

$$21x^2 + 10xy\sqrt{3} + 31y^2 = 144$$

□

Thanks to the elimination of the  $xy'$  term from the equation  $21x^2 + 10xy\sqrt{3} + 31y^2 = 144$  in Example 1.4.1 number 2, we were able to graph the equation on the  $x'y'$ -plane using what we know from Chapter ??.

It is natural to wonder if, given an equation of the form  $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ , with  $B \neq 0$ , is there an angle  $\theta$  so that if we rotate the  $x$  and  $y$ -axes counter-clockwise through that angle  $\theta$ , the equation in the rotated variables  $x'$  and  $y'$  contains no  $x'y'$  term.

To find out, we make the usual substitutions  $x = x' \cos(\theta) - y' \sin(\theta)$  and  $y = x' \sin(\theta) + y' \cos(\theta)$  into the equation  $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$  and set the coefficient of the  $x'y'$  term equal to 0.

Terms containing  $x'y'$  in this expression will come from the first three terms of the equation:  $Ax^2$ ,  $Bxy$  and  $Cy^2$ . We leave it to the reader to verify that

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 &= (x')^2 \cos^2(\theta) - 2x'y' \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta) + (y')^2 \sin^2(\theta) \\ xy &= (x')^2 \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta) + x'y' (\cos^2(\theta) - \sin^2(\theta)) - (y')^2 \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta) \\ y^2 &= (x')^2 \sin^2(\theta) + 2x'y' \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta) + (y')^2 \cos^2(\theta) \end{aligned}$$

The contribution to the  $x'y'$ -term from  $Ax^2$  is  $-2A \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta)$ , from  $Bxy$  it is  $B (\cos^2(\theta) - \sin^2(\theta))$ , and from  $Cy^2$  it is  $2C \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta)$ . Equating the  $x'y'$ -term to 0, we get

$$\begin{aligned} -2A \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta) + B (\cos^2(\theta) - \sin^2(\theta)) + 2C \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta) &= 0 \\ -A \sin(2\theta) + B \cos(2\theta) + C \sin(2\theta) &= 0 \quad \text{Double Angle Identities} \end{aligned}$$

From this, we get  $B \cos(2\theta) = (A - C) \sin(2\theta)$ . Our goal is to solve for  $\theta$  in terms of  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$ .

Since we are assuming  $B \neq 0$ , we can divide both sides of this equation by  $B$ . To solve for  $\theta$  we would like to divide both sides of the equation by  $\sin(2\theta)$ , provided of course that we have assurances that  $\sin(2\theta) \neq 0$ .

If  $\sin(2\theta) = 0$ , then we would have  $B \cos(2\theta) = 0$ , and since  $B \neq 0$ , this would force  $\cos(2\theta) = 0$ . Since no angle  $\theta$  can have both  $\sin(2\theta) = 0$  and  $\cos(2\theta) = 0$ , we can safely assume<sup>3</sup>  $\sin(2\theta) \neq 0$ .

Hence, we get  $\frac{\cos(2\theta)}{\sin(2\theta)} = \frac{A-C}{B}$ , or  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{A-C}{B}$ . We have just proved the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.8.** The equation  $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$  with  $B \neq 0$  can be transformed into an equation in variables  $x'$  and  $y'$  without any  $x'y'$  terms by rotating the  $x$ - and  $y$ - axes counter-clockwise through an angle  $\theta$  which satisfies  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{A-C}{B}$ .

We put Theorem 1.8 to good use in the following example.

**Example 1.4.2.** Graph the following equations.

1.  $5x^2 + 26xy + 5y^2 - 16x\sqrt{2} + 16y\sqrt{2} - 104 = 0$

2.  $16x^2 + 24xy + 9y^2 + 15x - 20y = 0$

**Solution.**

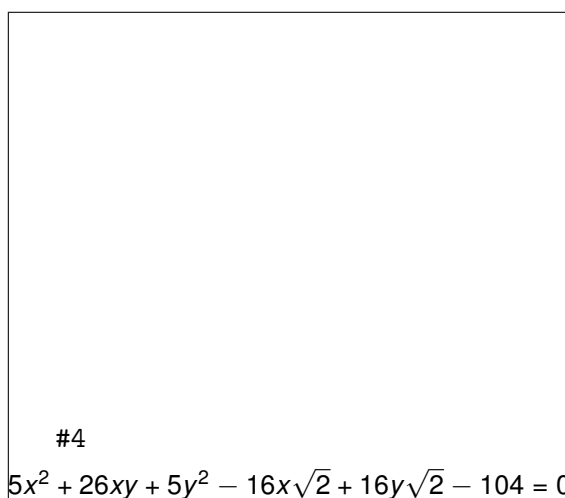
1. Since the equation  $5x^2 + 26xy + 5y^2 - 16x\sqrt{2} + 16y\sqrt{2} - 104 = 0$  is already given to us in the form required by Theorem 1.8, we identify  $A = 5$ ,  $B = 26$  and  $C = 5$  so that  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{A-C}{B} = \frac{5-5}{26} = 0$ .

This means  $\cot(2\theta) = 0$  which gives  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\pi}{2}k$  for integers  $k$ . We choose  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$  so that our rotation equations are  $x = \frac{x'\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{y'\sqrt{2}}{2}$  and  $y = \frac{x'\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{y'\sqrt{2}}{2}$ . The reader should verify that

$$x^2 = \frac{(x')^2}{2} - x'y' + \frac{(y')^2}{2}, \quad xy = \frac{(x')^2}{2} - \frac{(y')^2}{2}, \quad y^2 = \frac{(x')^2}{2} + x'y' + \frac{(y')^2}{2}$$

Making the other substitutions, we get that  $5x^2 + 26xy + 5y^2 - 16x\sqrt{2} + 16y\sqrt{2} - 104 = 0$  reduces to  $18(x')^2 - 8(y')^2 + 32y' - 104 = 0$ , or  $\frac{(x')^2}{4} - \frac{(y'-2)^2}{9} = 1$ .

Hence, we have a hyperbola centered at the  $x'y'$ -coordinates  $(0, 2)$  opening in the  $x'$  direction with vertices  $(\pm 2, 2)$  (in  $x'y'$ -coordinates) and asymptotes  $y' = \pm \frac{3}{2}x' + 2$ . We graph this equation below.



<sup>3</sup>The reader is invited to think about the case  $\sin(2\theta) = 0$  geometrically. What happens to the axes in this case?

#### 1.4. THE POLAR FORM OF THE CONIC SECTIONS IN POLAR COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

2. From  $16x^2 + 24xy + 9y^2 + 15x - 20y = 0$ , we get  $A = 16$ ,  $B = 24$  and  $C = 9$  so that  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{7}{24}$ . Since this isn't one of the values of the common angles, we will need to use inverse functions.

Ultimately, we need to find  $\cos(\theta)$  and  $\sin(\theta)$ , which means we have two options. If we use the arccotangent function immediately, after the usual calculations we get  $\theta = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{arccot}\left(\frac{7}{24}\right)$ . To get  $\cos(\theta)$  and  $\sin(\theta)$  from this, we would need to use half angle identities.

Alternatively, we can start with  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{7}{24}$ , use a double angle identity, and then go after  $\cos(\theta)$  and  $\sin(\theta)$ . We adopt the second approach.

From  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{7}{24}$ , we have  $\tan(2\theta) = \frac{24}{7}$ . Using the double angle identity for tangent, we have  $\frac{2 \tan(\theta)}{1 - \tan^2(\theta)} = \frac{24}{7}$ , which gives  $24 \tan^2(\theta) + 14 \tan(\theta) - 24 = 0$ .

Factoring, we get  $2(3 \tan(\theta) + 4)(4 \tan(\theta) - 3) = 0$  which gives  $\tan(\theta) = -\frac{4}{3}$  or  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{3}{4}$ . While either of these values of  $\tan(\theta)$  satisfies the equation  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{7}{24}$ , we choose  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{3}{4}$ , since this produces an acute angle,<sup>4</sup>  $\theta = \arctan\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)$ .

To find the rotation equations, we need  $\cos(\theta) = \cos\left(\arctan\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\right)$  and  $\sin(\theta) = \sin\left(\arctan\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\right)$ . Using the techniques developed in Section ?? we get  $\cos(\theta) = \frac{4}{5}$  and  $\sin(\theta) = \frac{3}{5}$ .

Our rotation equations are  $x = x' \cos(\theta) - y' \sin(\theta) = \frac{4x'}{5} - \frac{3y'}{5}$  and  $y = x' \sin(\theta) + y' \cos(\theta) = \frac{3x'}{5} + \frac{4y'}{5}$ .

As usual, we now substitute these quantities into  $16x^2 + 24xy + 9y^2 + 15x - 20y = 0$  and simplify. As a first step, the reader can verify

$$x^2 = \frac{16(x')^2}{25} - \frac{24x'y'}{25} + \frac{9(y')^2}{25}, \quad xy = \frac{12(x')^2}{25} + \frac{7x'y'}{25} - \frac{12(y')^2}{25}, \quad y^2 = \frac{9(x')^2}{25} + \frac{24x'y'}{25} + \frac{16(y')^2}{25}$$

Once the dust settles, we get  $25(x')^2 - 25y' = 0$ , or  $y' = (x')^2$ , whose graph is a parabola opening along the positive  $y'$ -axis with vertex  $(0, 0)$ . We graph this equation below.

<sup>4</sup>As usual, there are infinitely many solutions to  $\tan(\theta) = \frac{3}{4}$ . We choose the acute angle  $\theta = \arctan\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)$ . The reader is encouraged to think about why there is always at least one acute answer to  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{A-C}{B}$  and what this means geometrically in terms of what we are trying to accomplish by rotating the axes. The reader is also encouraged to keep a sharp lookout for the angles which satisfy  $\tan(\theta) = -\frac{4}{3}$  in our final graph. (Hint:  $\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\left(-\frac{4}{3}\right) = -1$ .)

#5  
 $16x^2 + 24xy + 9y^2 + 15x - 20y = 0$

□

Note that even though the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  were both positive numbers in parts 1 and 2 of Example 1.4.2, the graph in part 1 turned out to be a hyperbola and the graph in part 2 worked out to be a parabola. Whereas in Chapter ??, we could easily pick out which conic section we were dealing with based on the presence (or absence) of quadratic terms and their coefficients, Example 1.4.2 demonstrates the situation is much more complicated when an  $xy$  term is present.

Nevertheless, it is possible to determine which conic section we have by looking at a special, familiar *combination* of the coefficients of the quadratic terms. We have the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.9.**

Suppose the equation  $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$  describes a non-degenerate conic section.<sup>a</sup>

- If  $B^2 - 4AC > 0$  then the graph of the equation is a hyperbola.
- If  $B^2 - 4AC = 0$  then the graph of the equation is a parabola.
- If  $B^2 - 4AC < 0$  then the graph of the equation is an ellipse or circle.

<sup>a</sup>Recall that this means its graph is either a circle, parabola, ellipse or hyperbola. See page ??.

As you may expect, the quantity  $B^2 - 4AC$  mentioned in Theorem 1.9 is called the **discriminant** of the conic section. While we will not attempt to explain the deep Mathematics which produces this 'coincidence', we will at least work through the proof of Theorem 1.9 mechanically to show that it is true.<sup>5</sup>

First note that if the coefficient  $B = 0$  in the equation  $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ , Theorem 1.9 reduces to the result presented in Exercise ?? in Section ??.

Hence, we proceed under the assumption that  $B \neq 0$ . We rotate the  $xy$ -axes counter-clockwise through an angle  $\theta$  which satisfies  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{A-C}{B}$  to produce an equation with no  $x'y'$ -term in accordance with Theorem 1.8:  $A'(x')^2 + C'(y')^2 + Dx' + Ey' + F' = 0$ .

<sup>5</sup>We hope that someday you get to see *why* this works the way it does.

#### 1.4. THE POLAR FORM OF THE CONIC SECTIONS IN POLAR COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

In this form, we can invoke Exercise ?? in Section ?? once more using the product  $A'C'$ . Our goal is to find the product  $A'C'$  in terms of the coefficients  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  in the original equation.

We substitute  $x = x' \cos(\theta) - y' \sin(\theta)$   $y = x' \sin(\theta) + y' \cos(\theta)$  into  $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ . After gathering like terms, the coefficient  $A'$  on  $(x')^2$  and the coefficient  $C'$  on  $(y')^2$  are

$$\begin{aligned} A' &= A \cos^2(\theta) + B \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta) + C \sin^2(\theta) \\ C' &= A \sin^2(\theta) - B \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta) + C \cos^2(\theta) \end{aligned}$$

In order to make use of the condition  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{A-C}{B}$ , we rewrite our formulas for  $A'$  and  $C'$  using the power reduction formulas. After some regrouping, we get

$$\begin{aligned} 2A' &= [(A + C) + (A - C) \cos(2\theta)] + B \sin(2\theta) \\ 2C' &= [(A + C) - (A - C) \cos(2\theta)] - B \sin(2\theta) \end{aligned}$$

Next, we try to make sense of the product

$$(2A')(2C') = \{[(A + C) + (A - C) \cos(2\theta)] + B \sin(2\theta)\} \{[(A + C) - (A - C) \cos(2\theta)] - B \sin(2\theta)\}$$

We break this product into pieces. First, we use the difference of squares to multiply the 'first' quantities in each factor to get

$$[(A + C) + (A - C) \cos(2\theta)][(A + C) - (A - C) \cos(2\theta)] = (A + C)^2 - (A - C)^2 \cos^2(2\theta)$$

Next, we add the product of the 'outer' and 'inner' quantities in each factor to get

$$\begin{aligned} &-B \sin(2\theta) [(A + C) + (A - C) \cos(2\theta)] \\ &+ B \sin(2\theta) [(A + C) - (A - C) \cos(2\theta)] = -2B(A - C) \cos(2\theta) \sin(2\theta) \end{aligned}$$

The product of the 'last' quantity in each factor is  $(B \sin(2\theta))(-B \sin(2\theta)) = -B^2 \sin^2(2\theta)$ .

Putting all of this together yields

$$4A'C' = (A + C)^2 - (A - C)^2 \cos^2(2\theta) - 2B(A - C) \cos(2\theta) \sin(2\theta) - B^2 \sin^2(2\theta)$$

From  $\cot(2\theta) = \frac{A-C}{B}$ , we get  $\frac{\cos(2\theta)}{\sin(2\theta)} = \frac{A-C}{B}$ , or  $(A - C) \sin(2\theta) = B \cos(2\theta)$ .

Using this substitution twice along with the Pythagorean Identity  $\cos^2(2\theta) = 1 - \sin^2(2\theta)$  we get:



$$\begin{aligned}
 4A'C' &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 \cos^2(2\theta) - 2B(A-C) \cos(2\theta) \sin(2\theta) - B^2 \sin^2(2\theta) \\
 &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 [1 - \sin^2(2\theta)] - 2B \cos(2\theta) B \cos(2\theta) - B^2 \sin^2(2\theta) \\
 &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 + (A-C)^2 \sin^2(2\theta) - 2B^2 \cos^2(2\theta) - B^2 \sin^2(2\theta) \\
 &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 + [(A-C) \sin(2\theta)]^2 - 2B^2 \cos^2(2\theta) - B^2 \sin^2(2\theta) \\
 &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 + [B \cos(2\theta)]^2 - 2B^2 \cos^2(2\theta) - B^2 \sin^2(2\theta) \\
 &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 + B^2 \cos^2(2\theta) - 2B^2 \cos^2(2\theta) - B^2 \sin^2(2\theta) \\
 &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 - B^2 \cos^2(2\theta) - B^2 \sin^2(2\theta) \\
 &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 - B^2 [\cos^2(2\theta) + \sin^2(2\theta)] \\
 &= (A+C)^2 - (A-C)^2 - B^2(1) \\
 &= (A^2 + 2AC + C^2) - (A^2 - 2AC + C^2) - B^2 \\
 &= 4AC - B^2
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $B^2 - 4AC = -4A'C'$ , so the quantity  $B^2 - 4AC$  has the opposite sign of  $A'C'$ . The result now follows by applying Exercise ?? in Section ??.

**Example 1.4.3.** Use Theorem 1.9 to classify the graphs of the following non-degenerate conics.

1.  $21x^2 + 10xy\sqrt{3} + 31y^2 = 144$
2.  $5x^2 + 26xy + 5y^2 - 16x\sqrt{2} + 16y\sqrt{2} - 104 = 0$
3.  $16x^2 + 24xy + 9y^2 + 15x - 20y = 0$

**Solution.** This is a straightforward application of Theorem 1.9.

1. We have  $A = 21$ ,  $B = 10\sqrt{3}$  and  $C = 31$  so  $B^2 - 4AC = (10\sqrt{3})^2 - 4(21)(31) = -2304 < 0$ . Theorem 1.9 predicts the graph is an ellipse, which checks with our work from Example 1.4.1 number 2.
2. Here,  $A = 5$ ,  $B = 26$  and  $C = 5$ , so  $B^2 - 4AC = 26^2 - 4(5)(5) = 576 > 0$ . Theorem 1.9 classifies the graph as a hyperbola, which matches our answer to Example 1.4.2 number 1.
3. Finally, we have  $A = 16$ ,  $B = 24$  and  $C = 9$  which gives  $24^2 - 4(16)(9) = 0$ . Theorem 1.9 tells us that the graph is a parabola, matching our result from Example 1.4.2 number 2.  $\square$

## 1.4.2 The Polar Form of Conics

Here, we revisit the conic sections from a more unified perspective starting with a 'new' definition below.

**Definition 1.4.** Given a fixed line  $L$ , a point  $F$  not on  $L$ , and a positive number  $e$ , a conic section is the set of all points  $P$  such that

$$\frac{\text{the distance from } P \text{ to } F}{\text{the distance from } P \text{ to } L} = e$$

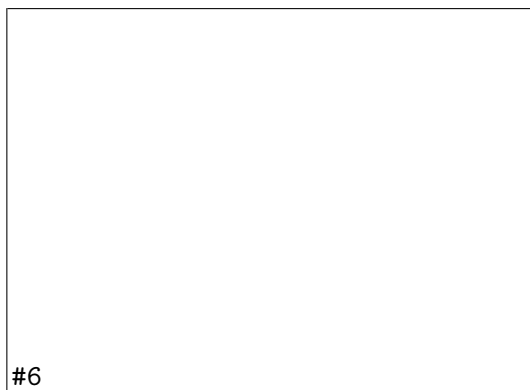
The line  $L$  is called the **directrix** of the conic section, the point  $F$  is called a **focus** of the conic section, and the constant  $e$  is called the **eccentricity** of the conic section.

We have seen the notions of focus and directrix before in the definition of a parabola, Definition ???. There, a parabola is defined as the set of points equidistant from the focus and directrix, giving an eccentricity  $e = 1$  according to Definition 1.4.

We have also seen the concept of eccentricity before. It was introduced for ellipses in Definition ??? in Section ??, and later extended to hyperbolas in Exercise ?? in Section ???. There,  $e$  was also defined as a ratio of distances, though in these cases the distances involved were measurements from the center to a focus and from the center to a vertex.

One way to reconcile the ‘old’ ideas of focus, directrix and eccentricity with the ‘new’ ones presented in Definition 1.4 is to derive equations for the conic sections using Definition 1.4 and compare these parameters with what we know from Chapter ???.

We begin by assuming the conic section has eccentricity  $e$ , a focus  $F$  at the origin and that the directrix is the vertical line  $x = -d$  as in the figure below.



Using a polar coordinate representation  $P(r, \theta)$  for a point on the conic with  $r > 0$ , we get

$$e = \frac{\text{the distance from } P \text{ to } F}{\text{the distance from } P \text{ to } L} = \frac{r}{d + r \cos(\theta)}$$

so that  $r = e(d + r \cos(\theta))$ . Solving this equation for  $r$ , yields

$$r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \cos(\theta)}$$

At this point, we convert the equation  $r = e(d + r \cos(\theta))$  back into a rectangular equation in the variables  $x$  and  $y$ . If  $e > 0$ , but  $e \neq 1$ , the usual conversion process outlined in Section 1.1 gives<sup>6</sup>

$$\left( \frac{(1 - e^2)^2}{e^2 d^2} \right) \left( x - \frac{e^2 d}{1 - e^2} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{1 - e^2}{e^2 d^2} \right) y^2 = 1$$

If  $0 < e < 1$ , then  $0 < 1 - e^2 < 1$  and, hence,  $(1 - e^2)^2 < 1 - e^2$ . We leave it to the reader to show that this means we have the equation of an ellipse centered at  $\left( \frac{e^2 d}{1 - e^2}, 0 \right)$  with major axis along the  $x$ -axis.

Using the notation from Section ??, we have  $a^2 = \frac{e^2 d^2}{(1 - e^2)^2}$  and  $b^2 = \frac{e^2 d^2}{1 - e^2}$ , so the major axis has length  $\frac{2ed}{1 - e^2}$  and the minor axis has length  $\frac{2ed}{\sqrt{1 - e^2}}$ .

Moreover, we find that one focus is  $(0, 0)$  and working through the formula given in Definition ?? gives the eccentricity to be  $e$ , as required.

If  $e > 1$ , then  $1 - e^2 < 0$  but  $(1 - e^2)^2 > 0$  so the equation generates a hyperbola with center  $\left( \frac{e^2 d}{1 - e^2}, 0 \right)$  whose transverse axis lies along the  $x$ -axis.

Since such hyperbolas have the form  $\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , we need to take the *opposite* reciprocal of the coefficient of  $y^2$  to find  $b^2$ .

Doing this, we obtain<sup>7</sup>  $a^2 = \frac{e^2 d^2}{(1 - e^2)^2} = \frac{e^2 d^2}{(e^2 - 1)^2}$  and  $b^2 = -\frac{e^2 d^2}{1 - e^2} = \frac{e^2 d^2}{e^2 - 1}$ , so the transverse axis has length  $\frac{2ed}{e^2 - 1}$  and the conjugate axis has length  $\frac{2ed}{\sqrt{e^2 - 1}}$ .

Additionally, we verify that one focus is at  $(0, 0)$ , and the formula given in Exercise ?? in Section ?? gives the eccentricity is  $e$  in this case as well.

If  $e = 1$ , the equation  $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \cos(\theta)}$  reduces to  $r = \frac{d}{1 - \cos(\theta)}$  which translates to  $y^2 = 2d \left( x + \frac{d}{2} \right)$ .

The equation  $y^2 = 2d \left( x + \frac{d}{2} \right)$  describes a parabola with vertex  $\left( -\frac{d}{2}, 0 \right)$  opening to the right.

In the language of Section ??,  $4p = 2d$  so  $p = \frac{d}{2}$ , the focus is  $(0, 0)$ , the focal diameter is  $2d$  and the directrix is  $x = -d$ , as required.

Hence, we have shown that in all cases, our ‘new’ understanding of ‘conic section’, ‘focus’, ‘eccentricity’ and ‘directrix’ as presented in Definition 1.4 correspond with the ‘old’ definitions given in Chapter ??.

Before we summarize our findings, we note that in order to arrive at our general equation of a conic  $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \cos(\theta)}$ , we assumed that the directrix was the line  $x = -d$  for  $d > 0$ .

We could have just as easily chosen the directrix to be  $x = d$ ,  $y = -d$  or  $y = d$ . As the reader can verify, in these cases we obtain the forms  $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \cos(\theta)}$ ,  $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \sin(\theta)}$  and  $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \sin(\theta)}$ , respectively.

The key thing to remember is that in any of these cases, the directrix is always perpendicular to the major axis of an ellipse and it is always perpendicular to the transverse axis of the hyperbola.

For parabolas, knowing the focus is  $(0, 0)$  and the directrix also tells us which way the parabola opens.

We have established the following theorem.

<sup>6</sup>Turn  $r = e(d + r \cos(\theta))$  into  $r = e(d + x)$  and square both sides to get  $r^2 = e^2(d + x)^2$ . Replace  $r^2$  with  $x^2 + y^2$ , expand  $(d + x)^2$ , combine like terms, complete the square on  $x$  and clean things up.

<sup>7</sup> Since  $1 - e^2 < 0$  here, we rewrite  $(1 - e^2)^2 = (e^2 - 1)^2$  to help simplify things later on.

**Theorem 1.10.** Suppose  $e$  and  $d$  are positive numbers. Then

- the graph of  $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \cos(\theta)}$  is the graph of a conic section with directrix  $x = -d$ .
- the graph of  $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \cos(\theta)}$  is the graph of a conic section with directrix  $x = d$ .
- the graph of  $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \sin(\theta)}$  is the graph of a conic section with directrix  $y = -d$ .
- the graph of  $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \sin(\theta)}$  is the graph of a conic section with directrix  $y = d$ .

In each case above,  $(0, 0)$  is a focus of the conic and the number  $e$  is the eccentricity of the conic.

- If  $0 < e < 1$ , the graph is an ellipse. The quantities  $\frac{2ed}{1 - e^2}$  and  $\frac{2ed}{\sqrt{1 - e^2}}$  are the lengths of the major and minor axes, respectively.
- If  $e = 1$ , the graph is a parabola whose focal diameter is  $2d$ .
- If  $e > 1$ , the graph is a hyperbola. The quantities  $\frac{2ed}{e^2 - 1}$  and  $\frac{2ed}{\sqrt{e^2 - 1}}$  are the lengths of the transverse and conjugate axes, respectively.

We test out Theorem 1.10 in the next example.

**Example 1.4.4.** Sketch the graphs of the following equations.

1.  $r = \frac{4}{1 - \sin(\theta)}$

2.  $r = \frac{12}{3 - \cos(\theta)}$

3.  $r = \frac{6}{1 + 2 \sin(\theta)}$

**Solution.**

1. From  $r = \frac{4}{1 - \sin(\theta)}$ , we first note  $e = 1$  which means we have a parabola on our hands.

Since  $ed = 4$ , we have  $d = 4$  and given the form of the equation, the directrix at  $y = -4$ .

Since the focus is at  $(0, 0)$ , we know that the vertex is located at the point (in rectangular coordinates)  $(0, -2)$  and must open upwards.

With  $d = 4$ , we have a focal diameter of  $2d = 8$ , so the parabola contains the points  $(\pm 4, 0)$ .

Putting all this together, we graph  $r = \frac{4}{1 - \sin(\theta)}$  below on the left.

2. We first rewrite  $r = \frac{12}{3 - \cos(\theta)}$  in the form found in Theorem 1.10, namely  $r = \frac{4}{1 - (1/3) \cos(\theta)}$ .

Since  $e = \frac{1}{3}$  satisfies  $0 < e < 1$ , we know that the graph of this equation is an ellipse.

Since  $ed = 4$ , we have  $d = 12$  and, based on the form of the equation, the directrix is  $x = -12$ .

Hence, the ellipse has its major axis along the  $x$ -axis, which means we can find the vertices of the ellipse by finding where the ellipse intersects the  $x$ -axis.

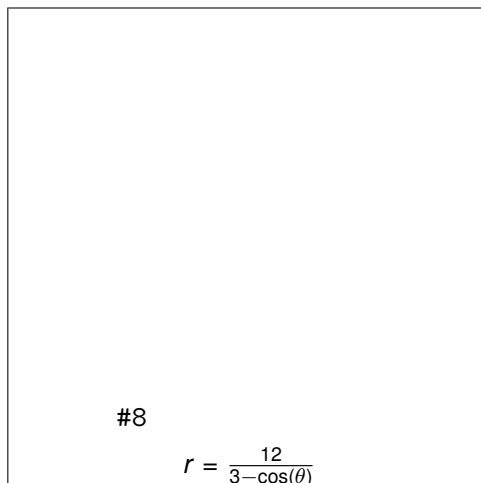
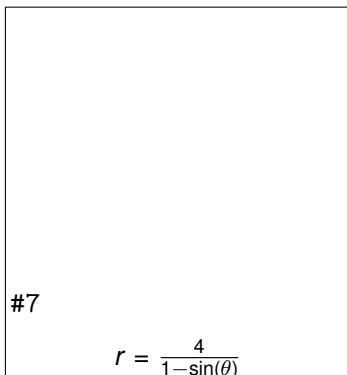
Since  $r(0) = 6$  and  $r(\pi) = 3$ , our vertices are the rectangular points  $(-3, 0)$  and  $(6, 0)$ .

The center of the ellipse is the midpoint of the vertices, which in this case is  $(\frac{3}{2}, 0)$ .<sup>8</sup>

We know one focus is  $(0, 0)$ , which is  $\frac{3}{2}$  from the center  $(\frac{3}{2}, 0)$  and this allows us to find the other focus  $(3, 0)$ , even though we are not asked to do so.

Finally, we know from Theorem 1.10 that the length of the minor axis is  $\frac{2ed}{\sqrt{1-e^2}} = \frac{4}{\sqrt{1-(1/3)^2}} = 6\sqrt{3}$  which means the endpoints of the minor axis are  $(\frac{3}{2}, \pm 3\sqrt{2})$ .

We now have everything we need to graph  $r = \frac{12}{3-\cos(\theta)}$  below on the right.



3. From  $r = \frac{6}{1+2\sin(\theta)}$  we get  $e = 2 > 1$  so the graph is a hyperbola.

Since  $ed = 6$ , we get  $d = 3$ , and from the form of the equation, we know the directrix is  $y = 3$ .

Hence, the transverse axis of the hyperbola lies along the  $y$ -axis, so we can find the vertices by looking where the hyperbola intersects the  $y$ -axis.

We find  $r(\frac{\pi}{2}) = 2$  and  $r(\frac{3\pi}{2}) = -6$ . These two points correspond to the rectangular points  $(0, 2)$  and  $(0, 6)$  which puts the center of the hyperbola at  $(0, 4)$ .

Since one focus is at  $(0, 0)$ , 4 units away from the center, we know the other focus is at  $(0, 8)$ .

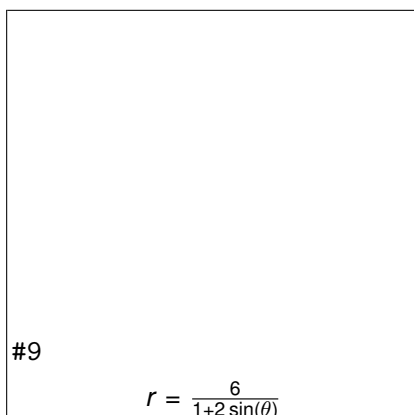
According to Theorem 1.10, the conjugate axis has a length of  $\frac{2ed}{\sqrt{e^2-1}} = \frac{(2)(6)}{\sqrt{2^2-1}} = 4\sqrt{3}$ . This together with the location of the vertices give the slopes of the asymptotes as:  $\pm \frac{2}{2\sqrt{3}} = \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ .

<sup>8</sup>As a quick check, we have from Theorem 1.10 the major axis should have length  $\frac{2ed}{1-e^2} = \frac{(2)(4)}{1-(1/3)^2} = 9$ .

## 1.4. THE POLAR FORM OF THE CONIC SECTIONS IN POLAR COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

Since the center of the hyperbola is  $(0, 4)$ , the asymptotes are  $y = \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}x + 4$ .

Using all of our work, we graph the hyperbola below.

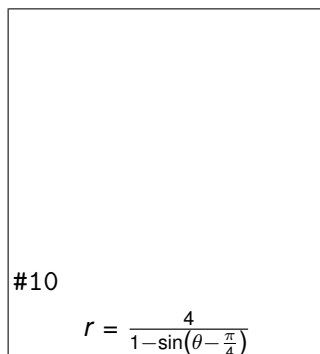


□

In light of Section 1.4.1, the reader may wonder what the rotated form of the conic sections would look like in polar form.

We know from Exercise 66 in Section 1.2 that replacing  $\theta$  with  $(\theta - \phi)$  in an expression  $r = f(\theta)$  rotates the graph of  $r = f(\theta)$  counter-clockwise by an angle  $\phi$ .

For instance, to graph  $r = \frac{4}{1-\sin(\theta-\frac{\pi}{4})}$  all we need to do is rotate the graph of  $r = \frac{4}{1-\sin(\theta)}$ , which we obtained in Example 1.4.4 number 1, counter-clockwise by  $\frac{\pi}{4}$  radians, as shown below.



Using rotations, we can greatly simplify the form of the conic sections presented in Theorem 1.10, since any three of the forms given there can be obtained from the fourth by rotating through some multiple of  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ .

Moreover, since rotations do not affect lengths, all of the formulas for lengths Theorem 1.10 remain intact.

The formula in Theorem 1.11 below captures all the conic sections that have a focus at  $(0, 0)$ . It also includes circles centered at the origin by extending the concept of eccentricity to include  $e = 0$ .

While substituting  $e = 0$  into the equation given in Theorem 1.11 quickly reduces to a circle centered at the origin, the reader is best advised to think about this idea in light of Definition ?? in Section ??.

**Theorem 1.11.** Given constants  $\ell > 0$ ,  $e \geq 0$  and  $\phi$ , the graph of the equation

$$r = \frac{\ell}{1 - e \cos(\theta - \phi)}$$

is a conic section with eccentricity  $e$  and one focus at  $(0, 0)$ .

- If  $e = 0$ , the graph is a circle centered at  $(0, 0)$  with radius  $\ell$ .
- If  $e \neq 0$ , then the conic has a focus at  $(0, 0)$ .

Defining  $d = \frac{\ell}{e}$ , the directrix contains the point with polar coordinates  $(-d, \phi)$ .

- If  $0 < e < 1$ , the graph is an ellipse. The quantities  $\frac{2ed}{1 - e^2}$  and  $\frac{2ed}{\sqrt{1 - e^2}}$  are the lengths of the major and minor axes, respectively.
- If  $e = 1$ , the graph is a parabola whose focal diameter is  $2d$ .
- If  $e > 1$ , the graph is a hyperbola. The quantities  $\frac{2ed}{e^2 - 1}$  and  $\frac{2ed}{\sqrt{e^2 - 1}}$  are the lengths of the transverse and conjugate axes, respectively.

### 1.4.3 Exercises

Graph the following equations.

$$1. x^2 + 2xy + y^2 - x\sqrt{2} + y\sqrt{2} - 6 = 0$$

$$2. 7x^2 - 4xy\sqrt{3} + 3y^2 - 2x - 2y\sqrt{3} - 5 = 0$$

$$3. 5x^2 + 6xy + 5y^2 - 4\sqrt{2}x + 4\sqrt{2}y = 0$$

$$4. x^2 + 2\sqrt{3}xy + 3y^2 + 2\sqrt{3}x - 2y - 16 = 0$$

$$5. 13x^2 - 34xy\sqrt{3} + 47y^2 - 64 = 0$$

$$6. x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy - y^2 + 8 = 0$$

$$7. x^2 - 4xy + 4y^2 - 2x\sqrt{5} - y\sqrt{5} = 0$$

$$8. 8x^2 + 12xy + 17y^2 - 20 = 0$$

Graph the following equations.

$$9. r = \frac{2}{1 - \cos(\theta)}$$

$$10. r = \frac{3}{2 + \sin(\theta)}$$

$$11. r = \frac{3}{2 - \cos(\theta)}$$

$$12. r = \frac{2}{1 + \sin(\theta)}$$

$$13. r = \frac{4}{1 + 3\cos(\theta)}$$

$$14. r = \frac{2}{1 - 2\sin(\theta)}$$

$$15. r = \frac{2}{1 + \sin(\theta - \frac{\pi}{3})}$$

$$16. r = \frac{6}{3 - \cos(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4})}$$

The matrix  $A(\theta) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) \\ \sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) \end{bmatrix}$  is called a **rotation matrix**.

We've seen this matrix most recently used in the proof of Theorem 1.7.

17. Show the matrix from Example ?? in Section ?? is none other than  $A(\frac{\pi}{4})$ .

18. Discuss with your classmates how to use  $A(\theta)$  to rotate points in the plane.

19. Using the even / odd identities for cosine and sine, show  $A(\theta)^{-1} = A(-\theta)$ . Interpret this geometrically.



### 1.4.4 Answers

1.  $x^2 + 2xy + y^2 - x\sqrt{2} + y\sqrt{2} - 6 = 0$   
becomes  $(x')^2 = -(y' - 3)$  after rotating  
counter-clockwise through  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

#11

$$x^2 + 2xy + y^2 - x\sqrt{2} + y\sqrt{2} - 6 = 0$$

2.  $7x^2 - 4xy\sqrt{3} + 3y^2 - 2x - 2y\sqrt{3} - 5 = 0$   
becomes  $\frac{(x'-2)^2}{9} + (y')^2 = 1$  after rotating  
counter-clockwise through  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$

#12

$$7x^2 - 4xy\sqrt{3} + 3y^2 - 2x - 2y\sqrt{3} - 5 = 0$$

3.  $5x^2 + 6xy + 5y^2 - 4\sqrt{2}x + 4\sqrt{2}y = 0$   
becomes  $(x')^2 + \frac{(y'+2)^2}{4} = 1$  after rotating  
counter-clockwise through  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .

#13

$$5x^2 + 6xy + 5y^2 - 4\sqrt{2}x + 4\sqrt{2}y = 0$$

4.  $x^2 + 2\sqrt{3}xy + 3y^2 + 2\sqrt{3}x - 2y - 16 = 0$   
becomes  $(x')^2 = y' + 4$  after rotating  
counter-clockwise through  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$

#14

$$x^2 + 2\sqrt{3}xy + 3y^2 + 2\sqrt{3}x - 2y - 16 = 0$$

# 1.4. THE POLAR FORM OF THE CONIC SECTIONS IN POLAR COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

5.  $13x^2 - 34xy\sqrt{3} + 47y^2 - 64 = 0$   
 becomes  $(y')^2 - \frac{(x')^2}{16} = 1$  after rotating  
 counter-clockwise through  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$ .

#15

$$13x^2 - 34xy\sqrt{3} + 47y^2 - 64 = 0$$

6.  $x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy - y^2 + 8 = 0$   
 becomes  $\frac{(x')^2}{4} - \frac{(y')^2}{4} = 1$  after rotating  
 counter-clockwise through  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$

#16

$$x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy - y^2 + 8 = 0$$

7.  $x^2 - 4xy + 4y^2 - 2x\sqrt{5} - y\sqrt{5} = 0$   
 becomes  $(y')^2 = x$  after rotating  
 counter-clockwise through  $\theta = \arctan\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ .

#17

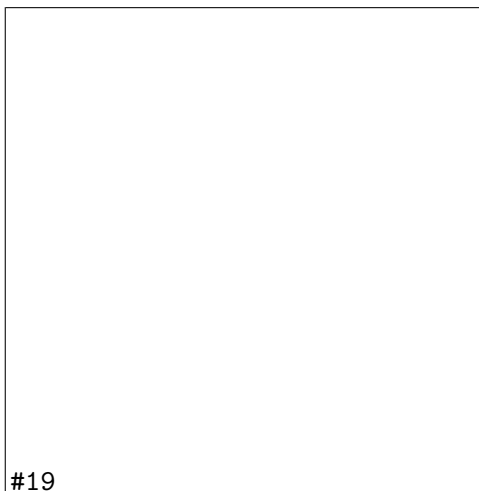
$$x^2 - 4xy + 4y^2 - 2x\sqrt{5} - y\sqrt{5} = 0$$

8.  $8x^2 + 12xy + 17y^2 - 20 = 0$   
 becomes  $(x')^2 + \frac{(y')^2}{4} = 1$  after rotating  
 counter-clockwise through  $\theta = \arctan(2)$

#18

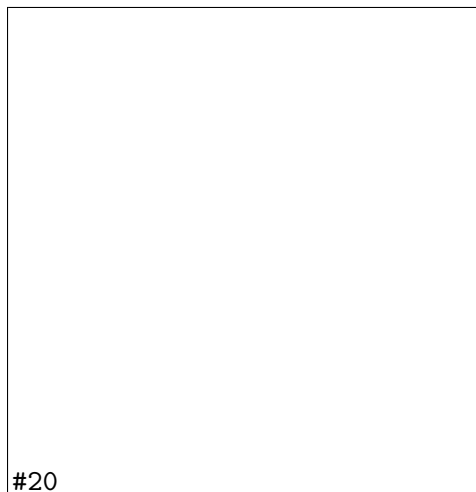
$$8x^2 + 12xy + 17y^2 - 20 = 0$$

9.  $r = \frac{2}{1 - \cos(\theta)}$  is a parabola  
 directrix  $x = -2$ , vertex  $(-1, 0)$   
 focus  $(0, 0)$ , focal diameter 4



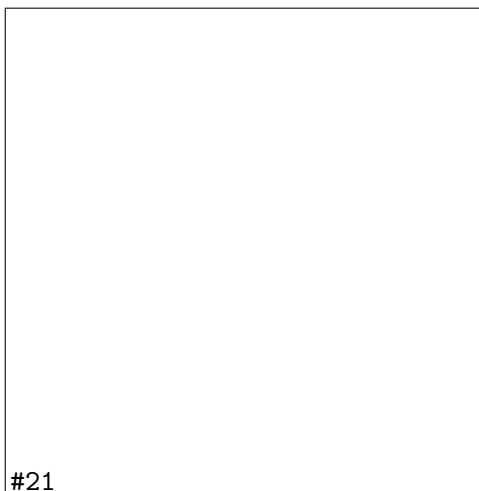
#19

10.  $r = \frac{3}{2 + \sin(\theta)} = \frac{\frac{3}{2}}{1 + \frac{1}{2} \sin(\theta)}$  is an ellipse  
 directrix  $y = 3$ , vertices  $(0, 1)$ ,  $(0, -3)$   
 center  $(0, -2)$ , foci  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(0, -4)$   
 minor axis length  $2\sqrt{3}$



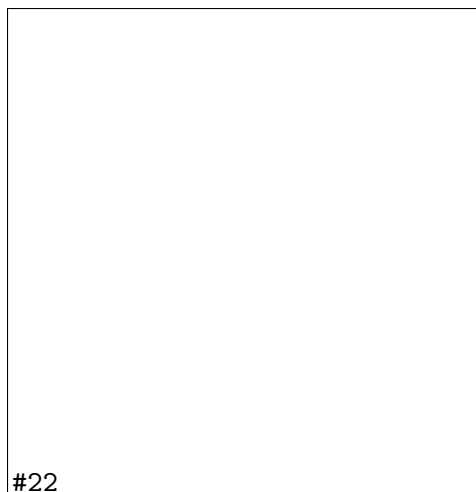
#20

11.  $r = \frac{3}{2 - \cos(\theta)} = \frac{\frac{3}{2}}{1 - \frac{1}{2} \cos(\theta)}$  is an ellipse  
 directrix  $x = -3$ , vertices  $(-1, 0)$ ,  $(3, 0)$   
 center  $(1, 0)$ , foci  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(2, 0)$   
 minor axis length  $2\sqrt{3}$



#21

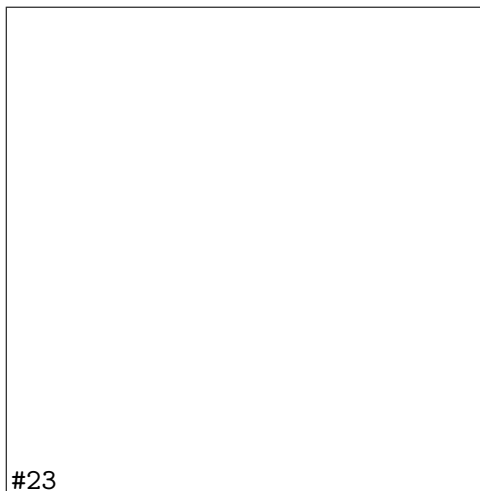
12.  $r = \frac{2}{1 + \sin(\theta)}$  is a parabola  
 directrix  $y = 2$ , vertex  $(0, 1)$   
 focus  $(0, 0)$ , focal diameter 4



#22

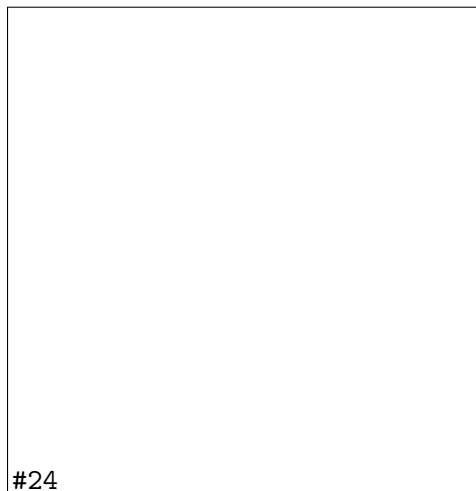
# 1.4. THE POLAR FORM OF THE CONIC SECTIONS IN POLAR COORDINATES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

13.  $r = \frac{4}{1+3\cos(\theta)}$  is a hyperbola  
 directrix  $x = \frac{4}{3}$ , vertices  $(1, 0)$ ,  $(2, 0)$   
 center  $(\frac{3}{2}, 0)$ , foci  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(3, 0)$   
 conjugate axis length  $2\sqrt{2}$



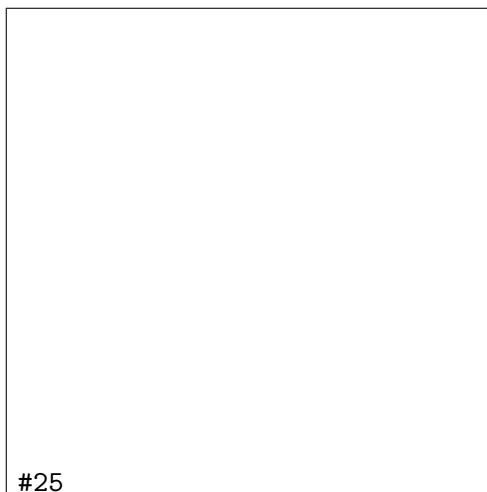
#23

14.  $r = \frac{2}{1-2\sin(\theta)}$  is a hyperbola  
 directrix  $y = -1$ , vertices  $(0, -\frac{2}{3})$ ,  $(0, -2)$   
 center  $(0, -\frac{4}{3})$ , foci  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(0, -\frac{8}{3})$   
 conjugate axis length  $\frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3}$



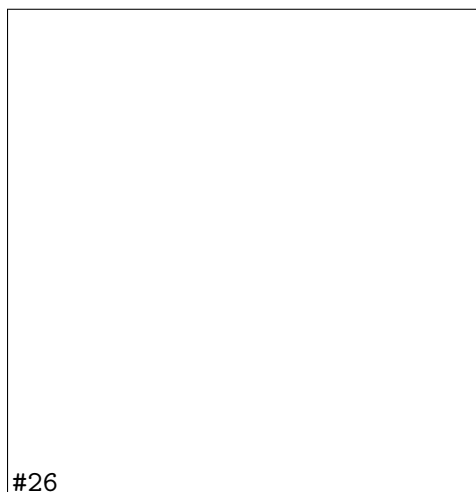
#24

15.  $r = \frac{2}{1+\sin(\theta-\frac{\pi}{3})}$  is  
 the parabola  $r = \frac{2}{1+\sin(\theta)}$   
 rotated through  $\phi = \frac{\pi}{3}$



#25

16.  $r = \frac{6}{3-\cos(\theta+\frac{\pi}{4})}$  is the ellipse  
 $r = \frac{6}{3-\cos(\theta)} = \frac{2}{1-\frac{1}{3}\cos(\theta)}$   
 rotated through  $\phi = -\frac{\pi}{4}$

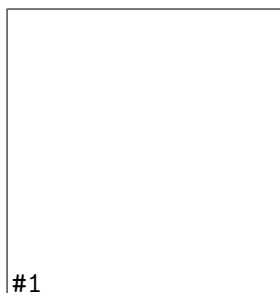


#26

## 1.5 Parametric Equations

As we have seen in Exercises ?? - ?? in Section ??, Chapter ?? and most recently in Section 1.2, there are scores of interesting curves which, when plotted in the  $xy$ -plane, neither represent  $y$  as a function of  $x$  nor  $x$  as a function of  $y$ .

In this section, we present a new concept which allows us to use functions to study these kinds of curves. To motivate the idea, we imagine a bug crawling across a table top starting at the point  $O$  and tracing out a curve  $C$  in the plane, as shown below.



The curve  $C$  does not represent  $y$  as a function of  $x$  because it fails the Vertical Line Test and it does not represent  $x$  as a function of  $y$  because it fails the Horizontal Line Test.

However, since the bug can be in only one place  $P(x, y)$  at any given time  $t$ , we can define the  $x$ -coordinate of  $P$  as a function of  $t$  and the  $y$ -coordinate of  $P$  as a (usually, but not necessarily) different function of  $t$ . Traditionally,  $f(t)$  is used for  $x$  and  $g(t)$  is used for  $y$ .

The independent variable  $t$  in this case is called a **parameter** and the system of equations

$$\begin{cases} x = f(t) \\ y = g(t) \end{cases}$$

is called a **system of parametric equations** or a **parametrization** of the curve  $C$ .<sup>1</sup>

The parametrization of  $C$  endows it with an *orientation* and the arrows on  $C$  indicate motion in the direction of increasing values of  $t$ .

In this case, our bug starts at the point  $O$ , travels upwards to the left, then loops back around to cross its path<sup>2</sup> at the point  $Q$  and finally heads off into the first quadrant.

It is important to note that the curve itself is a set of points and as such is devoid of any orientation. The parametrization determines the orientation and as we shall see, different parametrizations can determine different orientations.

If all of this seems hauntingly familiar, it should. By definition, the system of equations  $\{x = \cos(t), y = \sin(t)\}$  parametrizes the Unit Circle, giving it a counter-clockwise orientation.

<sup>1</sup>Note the use of the indefinite article 'a'. As we shall see, there are infinitely many different parametric representations for any given curve.

<sup>2</sup>Here, the bug reaches the point  $Q$  at two different times. While this does not contradict our claim that  $f(t)$  and  $g(t)$  are functions of  $t$ , it shows that neither  $f$  nor  $g$  can be one-to-one. (Think about this before reading on.)

More generally, the equations of circular motion  $\{x = r \cos(\omega t), y = r \sin(\omega t)\}$  developed on page ?? in Section ?? are parametric equations which trace out a circle of radius  $r$  centered at the origin.

If  $\omega > 0$ , the orientation is counter-clockwise; if  $\omega < 0$ , the orientation is clockwise. The angular frequency  $\omega$  determines ‘how fast’ the object moves around the circle.

In particular, the equations  $\{x = 2960 \cos(\frac{\pi}{12}t), y = 2960 \sin(\frac{\pi}{12}t)\}$  that model the motion of Lakeland Community College as the earth rotates (see Example ?? in Section ??) parameterize a circle of radius 2960 with a counter-clockwise rotation which completes one revolution as  $t$  runs through the interval  $[0, 24)$ . It is time for another example.

**Example 1.5.1.** Sketch the curve described by  $\begin{cases} x = t^2 - 3 \\ y = 2t - 1 \end{cases}$  for  $t \geq -2$ .

**Solution.** We follow the same procedure here as we have time and time again when asked to graph anything new – choose values for  $t$ , then plot and connect the corresponding points.

Since we are told  $t \geq -2$ , we start there and as we plot successive points, we draw an arrow to indicate the direction of the path for increasing values of  $t$ .

$t$	$x(t)$	$y(t)$	$(x(t), y(t))$
-2	1	-5	(1, -5)
-1	-2	-3	(-2, -3)
0	-3	-1	(-3, -1)
1	-2	1	(-2, 1)
2	1	3	(1, 3)
3	6	5	(6, 5)



□

The curve sketched out in Example 1.5.1 certainly looks like a parabola, and the presence of the  $t^2$  term in the equation  $x = t^2 - 3$  reinforces this hunch.

Since the parametric equations  $\{x = t^2 - 3, y = 2t - 1\}$  given to describe this curve are a *system* of equations, we can use the technique of substitution as described in Section ?? to eliminate the parameter  $t$  and get an equation involving just  $x$  and  $y$ .

To do so, we choose to solve the equation  $y = 2t - 1$  for  $t$  to get  $t = \frac{y+1}{2}$ . Substituting this into the equation  $x = t^2 - 3$  yields  $x = \left(\frac{y+1}{2}\right)^2 - 3$  or, after some rearrangement,  $(y + 1)^2 = 4(x + 3)$ .

Thinking back to Section ??, we see that the graph of this equation is a parabola with vertex  $(-3, -1)$  which opens to the right, as required.

Technically speaking, the equation  $(y + 1)^2 = 4(x + 3)$  describes the *entire* parabola, while the parametric equations  $\{x = t^2 - 3, y = 2t - 1 \text{ for } t \geq -2\}$  describe only a *portion* of the parabola.

In this case,<sup>3</sup> we can remedy this situation by restricting the bounds on  $y$ . Since the portion of the parabola we want is exactly the part where  $y \geq -5$ , the equation  $(y + 1)^2 = 4(x + 3)$  coupled with the restriction

<sup>3</sup>We will have an example shortly where no matter how we restrict  $x$  and  $y$ , we can never accurately describe the curve once we’ve eliminated the parameter.

$y \geq -5$  describes the same curve as the given parametric equations. The one piece of information we can never recover after eliminating the parameter, however, is the orientation of the curve.

Eliminating the parameter and obtaining an equation in terms of  $x$  and  $y$ , whenever possible, can be a great help in graphing curves determined by parametric equations.

If the system of parametric equations contains algebraic functions, as was the case in Example 1.5.1, then the usual techniques of substitution and elimination as learned in Section ?? can be applied to the system  $\{x = f(t), y = g(t)\}$  to eliminate the parameter.

If, on the other hand, the parametrization involves the trigonometric functions, the strategy changes slightly. In this case, it is often best to solve for the trigonometric functions and relate them using an identity.

We demonstrate these techniques in the following example.

**Example 1.5.2.** Sketch the curves described by the following parametric equations.

$$1. \begin{cases} x = t^3 \\ y = 2t^2 \end{cases} \text{ for } -1 \leq t \leq 1$$

$$3. \begin{cases} x = \sin(t) \\ y = \csc(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 < t < \pi$$

$$2. \begin{cases} x = e^{-t} \\ y = e^{-2t} \end{cases} \text{ for } t \geq 0$$

$$4. \begin{cases} x = 1 + 3\cos(t) \\ y = 2\sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}$$

**Solution.**

1. To get a feel for the curve described by the system  $\{x = t^3, y = 2t^2\}$  we first sketch the graphs of  $x = t^3$  and  $y = 2t^2$  over the interval  $[-1, 1]$  below on the left in the middle, respectively.

We note that as  $t$  takes on values in the interval  $[-1, 1]$ ,  $x = t^3$  ranges between  $-1$  and  $1$ , and  $y = 2t^2$  ranges between  $0$  and  $2$ . This means that all of the action is happening on a portion of the plane, namely  $\{(x, y) \mid -1 \leq x \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq 2\}$ .

Next, we plot a few points to get a sense of the position and orientation of the curve. Certainly,  $t = -1$  and  $t = 1$  are good values to pick since these are the extreme values of  $t$ . We also choose  $t = 0$ , since that corresponds to a (local) minimum<sup>4</sup> on the graph of  $y = 2t^2$ . Plugging in  $t = -1$  gives the point  $(-1, 2)$ ,  $t = 0$  gives  $(0, 0)$  and  $t = 1$  gives  $(1, 2)$ .

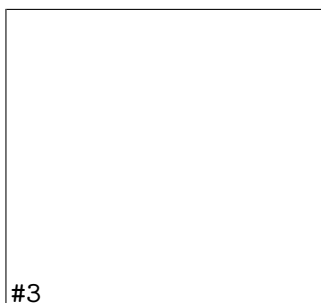
More generally, we see that  $x = t^3$  is *increasing* over the entire interval  $[-1, 1]$  whereas  $y = 2t^2$  is *decreasing* over the interval  $[-1, 0]$  and then *increasing* over  $[0, 1]$ .

Geometrically, this means that in order to trace out the path described by the parametric equations, we start at  $(-1, 2)$  (where  $t = -1$ ), then move to the right (since  $x$  is increasing) and down (since  $y$  is decreasing) to  $(0, 0)$  (where  $t = 0$ ).

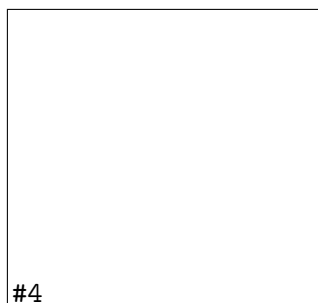
We continue to move to the right (since  $x$  is still increasing) but now move upwards (since  $y$  is now increasing) until we reach  $(1, 2)$  (where  $t = 1$ ).

<sup>4</sup>You should review Definitions ?? and ?? if you've forgotten what 'increasing', 'decreasing' and 'local minimum' mean.

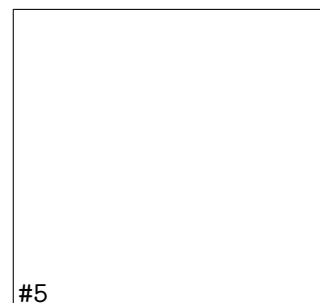
Finally, to get a good sense of the shape of the curve, we eliminate the parameter. Solving  $x = t^3$  for  $t$ , we get  $t = \sqrt[3]{x}$ . Substituting this into  $y = 2t^2$  gives  $y = 2(\sqrt[3]{x})^2 = 2x^{2/3}$ . Our experience in Section ?? yields the graph of our final answer below on the right.



$$x = t^3, -1 \leq t \leq 1$$



$$y = 2t^2, -1 \leq t \leq 1$$



$$\{x = t^3, y = 2t^2, -1 \leq t \leq 1\}$$

2. For the system  $\{x = 2e^{-t}, y = e^{-2t} \text{ for } t \geq 0\}$ , we proceed as in the previous example and graph  $x = 2e^{-t}$  and  $y = e^{-2t}$  over the interval  $[0, \infty)$  below on the left and in the middle, respectively.

We find that the range of  $x$  in this case is  $(0, 2]$  and the range of  $y$  is  $(0, 1]$ , so our graph will reside in a portion of Quadrant I:  $\{(x, y) \mid 0 < x \leq 2, 0 < y \leq 1\}$ .

Next, we plug in some friendly values of  $t$  to get a sense of the orientation of the curve. Since  $t$  lies in the exponent here, 'friendly' values of  $t$  involve natural logarithms. Starting with  $t = \ln(1) = 0$  we get<sup>5</sup>  $(2, 1)$ , for  $t = \ln(2)$  we get  $(1, \frac{1}{4})$  and for  $t = \ln(3)$  we get  $(\frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{9})$ .

Since  $t$  is ranging over the unbounded interval  $[0, \infty)$ , we take the time to analyze the end behavior of both  $x$  and  $y$ . As  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $x = 2e^{-t} \rightarrow 0^+$  and  $y = e^{-2t} \rightarrow 0^+$  as well. This means the graph of  $\{x = 2e^{-t}, y = e^{-2t}\}$  approaches the point  $(0, 0)$ .

Since both  $x = 2e^{-t}$  and  $y = e^{-2t}$  are always decreasing for  $t \geq 0$ , we know that our final graph will start at  $(2, 1)$  (where  $t = 0$ ), and move consistently to the left (since  $x$  is decreasing) and down (since  $y$  is decreasing) to approach the origin.

To eliminate the parameter, one way to proceed is to solve  $x = 2e^{-t}$  for  $t$  to get  $t = -\ln(\frac{x}{2})$ . Substituting this for  $t$  in  $y = e^{-2t}$  gives  $y = e^{-2(-\ln(x/2))} = e^{2\ln(x/2)} = e^{\ln(x/2)^2} = (\frac{x}{2})^2 = \frac{x^2}{4}$ .

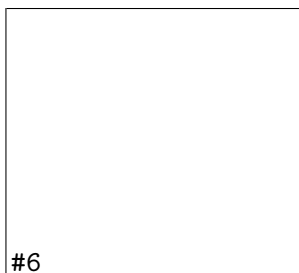
Alternatively, we could recognize that  $y = e^{-2t} = (e^{-t})^2$ , and since  $x = 2e^{-t}$  means  $e^{-t} = \frac{x}{2}$ , we get  $y = (\frac{x}{2})^2 = \frac{x^2}{4}$  this way as well.

Either way, the graph of  $\{x = 2e^{-t}, y = e^{-2t} \text{ for } t \geq 0\}$  is a portion of the parabola  $y = \frac{x^2}{4}$  which starts at the point  $(2, 1)$  and heads towards, but never reaches,<sup>6</sup>  $(0, 0)$  as seen below on the right.

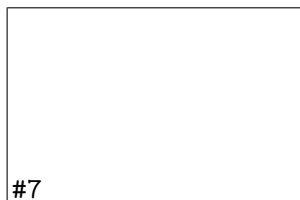
<sup>5</sup>The reader is encouraged to review Sections ?? and ?? as needed.

<sup>6</sup>Note the open circle at the origin. See our discussion about holes in graphs in Example ?? in Section ??.

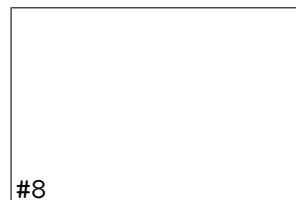




$$x = 2e^{-t}, t \geq 0$$



$$y = e^{-2t}, t \geq 0$$



$$\{x = 2e^{-t}, y = e^{-2t}, t \geq 0\}$$

3. For the system  $\{x = \sin(t), y = \csc(t) \text{ for } 0 < t < \pi\}$ , we start by graphing  $x = \sin(t)$  and  $y = \csc(t)$  over the interval  $(0, \pi)$  below on the left and in the middle, respectively.

We find that the range of  $x$  is  $(0, 1]$  while the range of  $y$  is  $[1, \infty)$  which means our graph will lie in the first quadrant.

Plotting a few friendly points, we see that  $t = \frac{\pi}{6}$  gives the point  $(\frac{1}{2}, 2)$ ,  $t = \frac{\pi}{2}$  gives  $(1, 1)$  and  $t = \frac{5\pi}{6}$  returns us to  $(\frac{1}{2}, 2)$ .

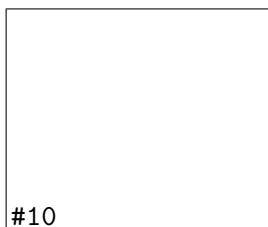
Since  $t = 0$  and  $t = \pi$  aren't included in the domain for  $t$ , (because  $y = \csc(t)$  is undefined at these  $t$ -values), we analyze the behavior of the system as  $t$  approaches 0 and  $\pi$ .

We find that as  $t \rightarrow 0^+$  as well as when  $t \rightarrow \pi^-$ , we get  $x = \sin(t) \rightarrow 0^+$  and  $y = \csc(t) \rightarrow \infty$ . Piecing all of this information together, we get that for  $t$  near 0, we have points with very small positive  $x$ -values, but very large positive  $y$ -values.

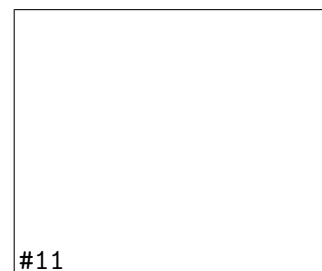
As  $t$  ranges through the interval  $(0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ ,  $x = \sin(t)$  is increasing and  $y = \csc(t)$  is decreasing. This means that we are moving to the right and downwards, through  $(\frac{1}{2}, 2)$  when  $t = \frac{\pi}{6}$  to  $(1, 1)$  when  $t = \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Once  $t = \frac{\pi}{2}$ , the orientation reverses, and we start to head to the left, since  $x = \sin(t)$  is now decreasing, and up, since  $y = \csc(t)$  is now increasing. We pass back through  $(\frac{1}{2}, 2)$  when  $t = \frac{5\pi}{6}$  back to the points with small positive  $x$ -coordinates and large positive  $y$ -coordinates.



$$x = \sin(t), 0 < t < \pi$$



$$y = \csc(t), 0 < t < \pi$$



$$\{x = \sin(t), y = \csc(t), 0 < t < \pi\}$$

To better explain this behavior, we eliminate the parameter. Using a reciprocal identity, we write  $y = \csc(t) = \frac{1}{\sin(t)}$ . Since  $x = \sin(t)$ , the curve traced out by this parametrization is a portion of the graph of  $y = \frac{1}{x}$ . We now can explain the unusual behavior as  $t \rightarrow 0^+$  and  $t \rightarrow \pi^-$  – for these values of  $t$ , we are hugging the vertical asymptote  $x = 0$  of the graph of  $y = \frac{1}{x}$ .

We see that the parametrization given above traces out the portion of  $y = \frac{1}{x}$  for  $0 < x \leq 1$  twice as  $t$  runs through the interval  $(0, \pi)$  as indicated above on the right.

4. Proceeding as above, we set about graphing  $\{x = 1 + 3 \cos(t), y = 2 \sin(t) \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}\}$  by first graphing  $x = 1 + 3 \cos(t)$  and  $y = 2 \sin(t)$  on the interval  $[0, \frac{3\pi}{2}]$  below on the left and middle, respectively.

We see that  $x$  ranges from  $-2$  to  $4$  and  $y$  ranges from  $-2$  to  $2$ . Hence our graph will reside in the region  $\{(x, y) \mid -2 \leq x \leq 4, -2 \leq y \leq 2\}$ .

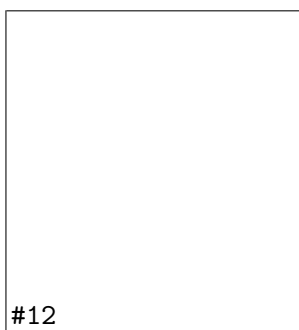
Plugging in  $t = 0, \frac{\pi}{2}, \pi$  and  $\frac{3\pi}{2}$  gives the points  $(4, 0), (1, 2), (-2, 0)$  and  $(1, -2)$ , respectively.

As  $t$  ranges from  $0$  to  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $x = 1 + 3 \cos(t)$  is decreasing, while  $y = 2 \sin(t)$  is increasing. This means that we start tracing out our answer at  $(4, 0)$  and continue moving to the left and upwards towards  $(1, 2)$ . For  $\frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq \pi$ ,  $x$  is decreasing, as is  $y$ , so the motion is still right to left, but now is downwards from  $(1, 2)$  to  $(-2, 0)$ . On the interval  $[\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}]$ ,  $x$  begins to increase, while  $y$  continues to decrease. Hence, the motion becomes left to right but continues downwards, connecting  $(-2, 0)$  to  $(1, -2)$ .

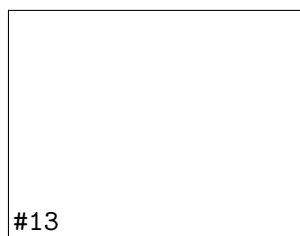
To eliminate the parameter here, we note that the trigonometric functions involved, namely  $\cos(t)$  and  $\sin(t)$ , are related by the Pythagorean Identity  $\cos^2(t) + \sin^2(t) = 1$ . Hence, we solve  $x = 1 + 3 \cos(t)$  for  $\cos(t)$  to get  $\cos(t) = \frac{x-1}{3}$ , and we solve  $y = 2 \sin(t)$  for  $\sin(t)$  to get  $\sin(t) = \frac{y}{2}$ .

Substituting these expressions into  $\cos^2(t) + \sin^2(t) = 1$  gives  $\left(\frac{x-1}{3}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y}{2}\right)^2 = 1$ , or  $\frac{(x-1)^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{4} = 1$ .

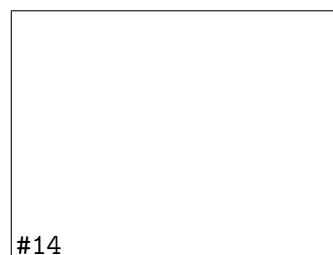
From Section ??, we know that the graph of this equation is an ellipse centered at  $(1, 0)$  with vertices at  $(-2, 0)$  and  $(4, 0)$  with a minor axis of length  $4$ . Our parametric equations here are tracing out three-quarters of this ellipse, in a counter-clockwise direction.



$$x = 1 + 3 \cos(t), 0 \leq t \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}$$



$$y = 2 \sin(t), 0 \leq t \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}$$



$$\{x = 1 + 3 \cos(t), y = 2 \sin(t), 0 \leq t \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}\}$$

□

Now that we have had some good practice sketching the graphs of parametric equations, we turn to the problem of finding parametric representations of curves. We start with the following.

### Parametrizations of Common Curves

- The graph of  $y = f(x)$  as  $x$  runs through some interval  $I$  is parametrized by:  
 $\{x = t, y = f(t) \text{ as } t \text{ runs through } I.$
- The graph of  $x = g(y)$  as  $y$  runs through some interval  $I$  is parametrized by:  
 $\{x = g(t), y = t \text{ as } t \text{ runs through } I.$
- The graph of a directed line segment from  $(x_0, y_0)$  to  $(x_1, y_1)$  is parametrized by:  
 $\{x = x_0 + (x_1 - x_0)t, y = y_0 + (y_1 - y_0)t \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1.$
- The graph of a circle or ellipse  $\frac{(x - h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y - k)^2}{b^2} = 1$  where  $a, b > 0$  is parametrized by:  
 $\{x = h + a \cos(t), y = k + b \sin(t) \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi.$   
 NOTE: This will impart a *counter-clockwise* orientation.

The reader is encouraged to verify the above formulas by eliminating the parameter and, when indicated, checking the orientation. We put these formulas to good use in the following example.

**Example 1.5.3.** Find a parametrization for each of the following curves and check your answers.

1.  $y = x^2$  from  $x = -3$  to  $x = 2$
2.  $y = f^{-1}(x)$  where  $f(x) = x^5 + 2x + 1$
3. The line segment which starts at  $(2, -3)$  and ends at  $(1, 5)$
4. The circle  $x^2 + 2x + y^2 - 4y = 4$
5. The left half of the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$

**Solution.**

1. Since  $y = x^2$  is written in the form  $y = f(x)$ , we let  $x = t$  and  $y = f(t) = t^2$ . Since  $x = t$ , the bounds on  $t$  match precisely the bounds on  $x$  we get  $\{x = t, y = t^2 \text{ for } -3 \leq t \leq 2.$

The check is almost trivial; with  $x = t$  we have  $y = t^2 = x^2$  as  $t = x$  runs from  $-3$  to  $2$ .

2. We are told to parametrize  $y = f^{-1}(x)$  for  $f(x) = x^5 + 2x + 1$  so it is safe to assume that  $f$  is one-to-one. (Otherwise,  $f^{-1}$  would not exist.) To find a formula  $y = f^{-1}(x)$ , we follow the procedure outlined on page ?? – we start with the equation  $y = f(x)$ , interchange  $x$  and  $y$  and solve for  $y$ .

Doing so gives us the equation  $x = y^5 + 2y + 1$ . While we could attempt to solve this equation for  $y$  to get an *explicit* formula for  $f^{-1}(x)$ , we don't need to. We can parametrize the *implicit* function<sup>7</sup>  $x = f(y) = y^5 + 2y + 1$  by setting  $y = t$  so that  $x = t^5 + 2t + 1$ .

<sup>7</sup>See the discussion preceding Example ?? in Section ?? for a review of this concept.

We know from Section ?? that since  $f(x) = x^5 + 2x + 1$  is an odd-degree polynomial, the range of  $y = f(x) = x^5 + 2x + 1$  is  $(-\infty, \infty)$ . Hence, in order to trace out the entire graph of  $x = f(y) = y^5 + 2y + 1$ , we need to let  $y$  run through all real numbers.

Hence, our final answer to this problem is  $\{x = t^5 + 2t + 1, y = t \text{ for } -\infty < t < \infty\}$ . As in the previous problem, our solution is trivial to check.<sup>8</sup>

3. To parametrize line segment which starts at  $(2, -3)$  and ends at  $(1, 5)$ , we make use of the formulas  $x = x_0 + (x_1 - x_0)t$  and  $y = y_0 + (y_1 - y_0)t$  for  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ . While these equations at first glance are quite a handful,<sup>9</sup> they can be summarized as 'starting point + (displacement) $t$ '.

To find the equation for  $x$ , we have that the line segment *starts* at  $x = 2$  and *ends* at  $x = 1$ . This means the *displacement* in the  $x$ -direction is  $\Delta x = (1 - 2) = -1$ . Hence, the equation for  $x$  is  $x = 2 + (-1)t = 2 - t$ .

Similarly for  $y$ , we note that the line segment starts at  $y = -3$  and ends at  $y = 5$ . Hence, the displacement in the  $y$ -direction is  $\Delta y = (5 - (-3)) = 8$ , so we get  $y = -3 + 8t$ .

Putting together our answers for  $x$  and  $y$ , we get  $\{x = 2 - t, y = -3 + 8t \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1\}$ .

To check, we can solve  $x = 2 - t$  for  $t$  to get  $t = 2 - x$ . Substituting this into  $y = -3 + 8t$  gives  $y = -3 + 8t = -3 + 8(2 - x)$ , or  $y = -8x + 13$ . We know this is the graph of a line, so all we need to check is that it starts and stops at the correct points.

When  $t = 0$ ,  $x = 2 - t = 2$ , and when  $t = 1$ ,  $x = 2 - t = 1$ . Plugging in  $x = 2$  gives  $y = -8(2) + 13 = -3$ , for an initial point of  $(2, -3)$ . When  $x = 1$ ,  $y = -8(1) + 13 = 5$  for an ending point of  $(1, 5)$ , as required.

4. In order to use the formulas above to parametrize the circle  $x^2 + 2x + y^2 - 4y = 4$ , we first need to put the equation into the correct form.

After completing the squares, we get  $(x + 1)^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 9$ , or  $\frac{(x+1)^2}{9} + \frac{(y-2)^2}{9} = 1$ .

Once again, the formulas  $x = h + a \cos(t)$  and  $y = k + b \sin(t)$  can be a challenge to memorize, but they come from the Pythagorean Identity  $\cos^2(t) + \sin^2(t) = 1$ , so we can always use the identity to get our parametrization instead of relying on memorizing a formula.

In the equation  $\frac{(x+1)^2}{9} + \frac{(y-2)^2}{9} = 1$ , we identify  $\cos(t) = \frac{x+1}{3}$  and  $\sin(t) = \frac{y-2}{3}$ . Rearranging these last two equations, we get  $x = -1 + 3 \cos(t)$  and  $y = 2 + 3 \sin(t)$ .

In order to complete one revolution around the circle, we let  $t$  range through the interval  $[0, 2\pi)$ , so our final answer  $\{x = -1 + 3 \cos(t), y = 2 + 3 \sin(t) \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi\}$ .

To check our answer, we could eliminate the parameter by solving  $x = -1 + 3 \cos(t)$  for  $\cos(t)$  and  $y = 2 + 3 \sin(t)$  for  $\sin(t)$ , invoking a Pythagorean Identity, and then manipulating the resulting equation in  $x$  and  $y$  into the original equation  $x^2 + 2x + y^2 - 4y = 4$ .

<sup>8</sup>Provided you followed the inverse function theory, of course.

<sup>9</sup>Compare and contrast this with Exercise ?? in Section ??.

Instead, we opt for a more direct approach. We substitute  $x = -1 + 3 \cos(t)$  and  $y = 2 + 3 \sin(t)$  into the equation  $x^2 + 2x + y^2 - 4y = 4$  and show that the latter is satisfied for all  $t$  such that  $0 \leq t < 2\pi$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 x^2 + 2x + y^2 - 4y &= 4 \\
 (-1 + 3 \cos(t))^2 + 2(-1 + 3 \cos(t)) + (2 + 3 \sin(t))^2 - 4(2 + 3 \sin(t)) &\stackrel{?}{=} 4 \\
 1 - 6 \cos(t) + 9 \cos^2(t) - 2 + 6 \cos(t) + 4 + 12 \sin(t) + 9 \sin^2(t) - 8 - 12 \sin(t) &\stackrel{?}{=} 4 \\
 9 \cos^2(t) + 9 \sin^2(t) - 5 &\stackrel{?}{=} 4 \\
 9 (\cos^2(t) + \sin^2(t)) - 5 &\stackrel{?}{=} 4 \\
 9(1) - 5 &\stackrel{?}{=} 4 \\
 4 &\stackrel{\checkmark}{=} 4
 \end{aligned}$$

Now that we know the parametric equations give us points on the circle, we can go through the usual analysis as demonstrated in Example 1.5.2 to show that the entire circle is covered as  $t$  ranges through the interval  $[0, 2\pi)$ .

5. In the equation  $\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ , we can either use the formulas above or think back to the Pythagorean Identity to get  $x = 2 \cos(t)$  and  $y = 3 \sin(t)$ .

The normal range on the parameter in this case is  $0 \leq t < 2\pi$ , but since we are interested in only the left half of the ellipse, we restrict  $t$  to the values which correspond to Quadrant II and Quadrant III angles, namely  $\frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}$ . Hence, our final answer is  $\{x = 2 \cos(t), y = 3 \sin(t) \text{ for } \frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}\}$ .

Substituting  $x = 2 \cos(t)$  and  $y = 3 \sin(t)$  into  $\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$  gives  $\frac{4 \cos^2(t)}{4} + \frac{9 \sin^2(t)}{9} = 1$ , which reduces to the Pythagorean Identity  $\cos^2(t) + \sin^2(t) = 1$ . This proves the points generated by the parametric equations  $\{x = 2 \cos(t), y = 3 \sin(t)\}$  lie on the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ .

Employing the techniques demonstrated in Example 1.5.2, we find that the restriction  $\frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{3\pi}{2}$  generates the left half of the ellipse, as required.  $\square$

We note that the formulas given on page 107 offer only *one* of literally *infinitely* many ways to parametrize the common curves listed there. At times, the formulas offered there need to be altered to suit the situation.

#### Adjusting Parametric Equations

- **Reversing Orientation:**

Replacing every occurrence of  $t$  with  $-t$  in a parametric description for a curve (including any inequalities which describe the bounds on  $t$ ) reverses the orientation of the curve.

- **Shift of Parameter:**

Replacing every occurrence of  $t$  with  $(t - c)$  in a parametric description for a curve (including any inequalities which describe the bounds on  $t$ ) shifts the start of the parameter  $t$  ahead by  $c$  units.

We demonstrate these techniques in the following example.

**Example 1.5.4.** Find a parametrization for the following curves.

1. The curve which starts at  $(2, 4)$  and follows the parabola  $y = x^2$  to end at  $(-1, 1)$ . Shift the parameter so that the path starts at  $t = 0$ .
2. The two part path which starts at  $(0, 0)$ , travels along a line to  $(3, 4)$ , then travels along a line to  $(5, 0)$ .
3. The Unit Circle, oriented clockwise, with  $t = 0$  corresponding to  $(0, -1)$ .

**Solution.**

1. We can parametrize  $y = x^2$  from  $x = -1$  to  $x = 2$  using the formula given on Page 107 as  $\{x = t, y = t^2 \text{ for } -1 \leq t \leq 2\}$ . This parametrization, however, starts at  $(-1, 1)$  and ends at  $(2, 4)$ . Hence, we need to reverse the orientation.

To this end, we replace every occurrence of  $t$  with  $-t$ :  $\{x = -t, y = (-t)^2 \text{ for } -1 \leq -t \leq 2\}$ . After simplifying, we get  $\{x = -t, y = t^2 \text{ for } -2 \leq t \leq 1\}$ .

We would like  $t$  to begin at  $t = 0$  instead of  $t = -2$ . The problem here is that the parametrization we have starts 2 units ‘too soon’, so we need to introduce a ‘time delay’ of 2.

Replacing every occurrence of  $t$  with  $(t - 2)$  gives  $\{x = -(t - 2), y = (t - 2)^2 \text{ for } -2 \leq t - 2 \leq 1\}$ . Simplifying yields  $\{x = 2 - t, y = t^2 - 4t + 4 \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 3\}$ .

We leave it to the reader to verify this system traces  $y = x^2$  starting with  $(2, 4)$  and ending at  $(-1, 1)$ .

2. Again, when parameterizing line segments, we think: ‘starting point + (displacement) $t$ ’. For the first part of the path, we get  $\{x = 3t, y = 4t \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1\}$ , and for the second part we get  $\{x = 3 + 2t, y = 4 - 4t \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1\}$ .

Since the first parametrization leaves off at  $t = 1$ , we shift the parameter in the second part so it starts at  $t = 1$ . Our current description of the second part starts at  $t = 0$ , so we need to introduce a ‘time delay’ of 1 unit to the second set of parametric equations.

Replacing  $t$  with  $(t - 1)$  in the second set of equations gives  $\{x = 3 + 2(t - 1), y = 4 - 4(t - 1) \text{ for } 0 \leq t - 1 \leq 1\}$ . Simplifying yields  $\{x = 1 + 2t, y = 8 - 4t \text{ for } 1 \leq t \leq 2\}$ . Hence, we may parametrize the path as  $\{x = f(t), y = g(t) \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 2\}$  where

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 3t, & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 1 \\ 1 + 2t, & \text{for } 1 \leq t \leq 2 \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad g(t) = \begin{cases} 4t, & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 1 \\ 8 - 4t, & \text{for } 1 \leq t \leq 2 \end{cases}$$

Again, we encourage the reader to check our solution.

3. We know that  $\{x = \cos(t), y = \sin(t) \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi\}$  gives a *counter-clockwise* parametrization of the Unit Circle with  $t = 0$  corresponding to  $(1, 0)$ , so our first task is to reverse orientation.

Replacing  $t$  with  $-t$  gives  $\{x = \cos(-t), y = \sin(-t)\}$  for  $0 \leq -t < 2\pi$ . Using the Even/Odd Identities, we simplify:  $\{x = \cos(t), y = -\sin(t)\}$  for  $-2\pi < t \leq 0$ . This parametrization gives a clockwise orientation, but  $t = 0$  still corresponds to the point  $(1, 0)$ ; the point  $(0, -1)$  is reached when  $t = -\frac{3\pi}{2}$ .

Our strategy is to first get the parametrization to ‘start’ at the point  $(0, -1)$  and then shift the parameter accordingly so the ‘start’ coincides with  $t = 0$ .

We know that any interval of length  $2\pi$  will parametrize the entire circle, so we keep the equations  $\{x = \cos(t), y = -\sin(t)\}$ , but start the parameter  $t$  at  $-\frac{3\pi}{2}$ , and find the upper bound by adding  $2\pi$  so  $-\frac{3\pi}{2} \leq t < \frac{\pi}{2}$ . We leave it to the reader to verify that  $\{x = \cos(t), y = -\sin(t)\}$  for  $-\frac{3\pi}{2} \leq t < \frac{\pi}{2}$  traces out the Unit Circle clockwise starting at the point  $(0, -1)$ .

We now shift the parameter by introducing a ‘time delay’ of  $\frac{3\pi}{2}$  units by replacing every occurrence of  $t$  with  $(t - \frac{3\pi}{2})$ . We get  $\{x = \cos(t - \frac{3\pi}{2}), y = -\sin(t - \frac{3\pi}{2})\}$  for  $-\frac{3\pi}{2} \leq t - \frac{3\pi}{2} < \frac{\pi}{2}$ . This simplifies courtesy of the Sum/Difference Formulas to  $\{x = -\sin(t), y = -\cos(t)\}$  for  $0 \leq t < 2\pi$ .

We leave the check of our solution to the reader. □

We put our answer to Example 1.5.4 number 3 to good use to derive the equation of a [cycloid](#).

Suppose a circle of radius  $r$  rolls along the positive  $x$ -axis at a constant velocity  $v$  as pictured below. Let  $\theta$  be the angle in radians which measures the amount of clockwise rotation experienced by the radius highlighted in the figure.



Our goal is to find parametric equations for the coordinates of the point  $P(x, y)$  in terms of  $\theta$ . From our work in Example 1.5.4 number 3, we know that clockwise motion along the Unit Circle starting at the point  $(0, -1)$  can be modeled by the equations  $\{x = -\sin(\theta), y = -\cos(\theta)\}$  for  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ . (We have renamed the parameter ‘ $\theta$ ’ to match the context of this problem.)

To model this motion on a circle of radius  $r$ , all we need to do<sup>10</sup> is multiply both  $x$  and  $y$  by the factor  $r$  which yields  $\{x = -r \sin(\theta), y = -r \cos(\theta)\}$ .

Next, we adjust for the fact that the circle isn’t stationary with center  $(0, 0)$ , but rather, is rolling along the positive  $x$ -axis. Since the velocity  $v$  is constant, we know that at time  $t$ , the center of the circle has traveled a distance  $vt$  down the positive  $x$ -axis. Furthermore, since the radius of the circle is  $r$  and the circle isn’t

<sup>10</sup>If we replace  $x$  with  $\frac{x}{r}$  and  $y$  with  $\frac{y}{r}$  in the equation for the Unit Circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ , we obtain  $(\frac{x}{r})^2 + (\frac{y}{r})^2 = 1$  which reduces to  $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ . In the language of Section ??, we are stretching the graph by a factor of  $r$  in both the  $x$ - and  $y$ -directions. Hence, we multiply both the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of points on the graph by  $r$ .

moving vertically, we know that the center of the circle is always  $r$  units above the  $x$ -axis. Putting these two facts together, we have that at time  $t$ , the center of the circle is at the point  $(vt, r)$ .

From Section ??, we know  $v = \frac{r\theta}{t}$ , or  $vt = r\theta$ . Hence, the center of the circle, in terms of the parameter  $\theta$ , is  $(r\theta, r)$ . As a result, we need to modify the equations  $\{x = -r \sin(\theta), y = -r \cos(\theta)\}$  by shifting the  $x$ -coordinate to the right  $r\theta$  units (by adding  $r\theta$  to the expression for  $x$ ) and the  $y$ -coordinate up  $r$  units<sup>11</sup> (by adding  $r$  to the expression for  $y$ ).

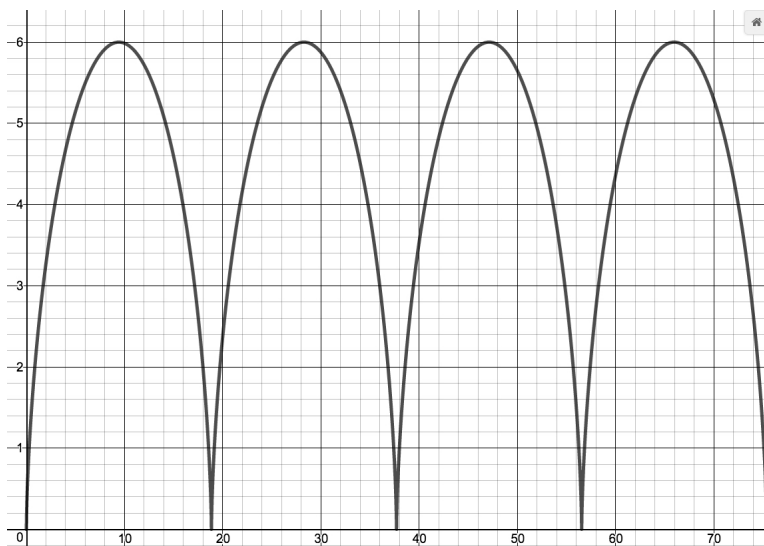
We get  $\{x = -r \sin(\theta) + r\theta, y = -r \cos(\theta) + r\}$ , which can be written as  $\{x = r(\theta - \sin(\theta)), y = r(1 - \cos(\theta))\}$ . Since the motion starts at  $\theta = 0$  and proceeds indefinitely, we set  $\theta \geq 0$ .

We end the section by using technology to graph a cycloid.

**Example 1.5.5.** Find the parametric equations of a cycloid which results from a circle of radius 3 rolling down the positive  $x$ -axis as described above. Graph your answer using a graphing utility.

**Solution.** We have  $r = 3$  which gives the equations  $\{x = 3(t - \sin(t)), y = 3(1 - \cos(t))\}$  for  $t \geq 0$ . (Here we have returned to the convention of using  $t$  as the parameter.)

Sketching the cycloid by hand is a wonderful exercise in Calculus, but for the purposes of this book, we use a graphing utility. Below is the graph of this cycloid created by [desmos](#).



We see the equations create a series of ‘arches’ and can (partially) verify the reasonableness the graph by finding the  $x$ -intercepts. To do this, we set  $y = 3(1 - \cos(t)) = 0$ , which amounts to solving  $\cos(t) = 1$ .

We get  $t = 2\pi k$  and since  $t \geq 0$ ,  $k$  can be any *nonnegative* integer. Substituting a few of these values for  $t$ ,  $t = 0$ ,  $t = 2\pi$ ,  $t = 4\pi$ , and  $t = 6\pi$  into the equations  $x = 3(t - \sin(t))$  and  $y = 3(1 - \cos(t))$  we obtain the points  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(6\pi, 0) \approx (18.85, 0)$ ,  $(12\pi, 0) \approx (37.70, 0)$  and  $(18\pi, 0) \approx (56.55, 0)$ , which match the graph. In general, the  $x$ -intercepts are  $(6\pi k, 0)$  for nonnegative integers  $k$ . We leave the details to the reader.

We note it is also possible to analytically determine the (local) maximums of the graph using the techniques demonstrated in Example 1.5.2 by analyzing  $y = 3(1 - \cos(t))$ . The maximums occur when  $t = (2k + 1)\pi$

<sup>11</sup>Does this seem familiar? See Example ?? in Section ??.



where  $k$  is a nonnegative integer, which isn't too surprising just looking at the problem from a symmetry perspective. Substituting these values for  $t$  into our equations for  $x$  and  $y$  produce points of the form  $(3(2k + 1)\pi, 6)$ . We leave the details to the reader.  $\square$

### 1.5.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1 - 20, plot the set of parametric equations by hand. Be sure to indicate the orientation imparted on the curve by the parametrization.

$$1. \begin{cases} x = 4t - 3 \\ y = 6t - 2 \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1$$

$$2. \begin{cases} x = 4t - 1 \\ y = 3 - 4t \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1$$

$$3. \begin{cases} x = 2t \\ y = t^2 \end{cases} \text{ for } -1 \leq t \leq 2$$

$$4. \begin{cases} x = t - 1 \\ y = 3 + 2t - t^2 \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 3$$

$$5. \begin{cases} x = t^2 + 2t + 1 \\ y = t + 1 \end{cases} \text{ for } t \leq 1$$

$$6. \begin{cases} x = \frac{1}{9}(18 - t^2) \\ y = \frac{1}{3}t \end{cases} \text{ for } t \geq -3$$

$$7. \begin{cases} x = t \\ y = t^3 \end{cases} \text{ for } -\infty < t < \infty$$

$$8. \begin{cases} x = t^3 \\ y = t \end{cases} \text{ for } -\infty < t < \infty$$

$$9. \begin{cases} x = \cos(t) \\ y = \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } -\frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$10. \begin{cases} x = 3 \cos(t) \\ y = 3 \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq \pi$$

$$11. \begin{cases} x = -1 + 3 \cos(t) \\ y = 4 \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$$

$$12. \begin{cases} x = 3 \cos(t) \\ y = 2 \sin(t) + 1 \end{cases} \text{ for } \frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq 2\pi$$

$$13. \begin{cases} x = 2 \cos(t) \\ y = \sec(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$14. \begin{cases} x = 2 \tan(t) \\ y = \cot(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 < t < \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$15. \begin{cases} x = \sec(t) \\ y = \tan(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } -\frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$16. \begin{cases} x = \sec(t) \\ y = \tan(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } \frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{3\pi}{2}$$

$$17. \begin{cases} x = \tan(t) \\ y = 2 \sec(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } -\frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{\pi}{2}$$

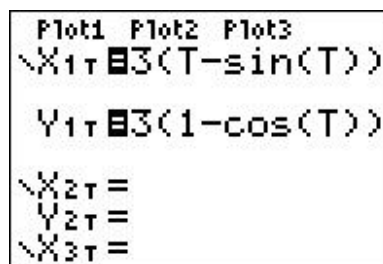
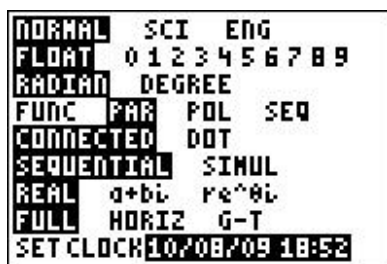
$$18. \begin{cases} x = \tan(t) \\ y = 2 \sec(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } \frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{3\pi}{2}$$

$$19. \begin{cases} x = \cos(t) \\ y = t \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq \pi$$

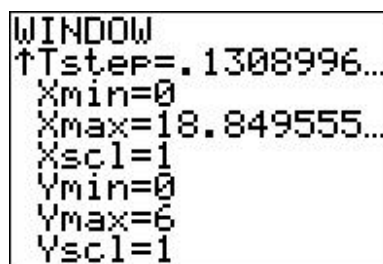
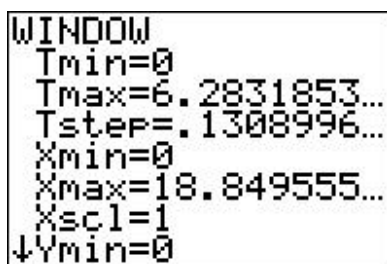
$$20. \begin{cases} x = \sin(t) \\ y = t \end{cases} \text{ for } -\frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$$

In the same way (and for the same reason) we took the time on page 44 in Section 1.2 to show how to graph polar equations using a graphing calculator, we take a few moments here to explain how to graph a system of parametric equations using a calculator. Our task is to graph the cycloid from Example 1.5.5,  $\{x = 3(t - \sin(t)), y = 3(1 - \cos(t))\}$  for  $t \geq 0$  using a graphing calculator.

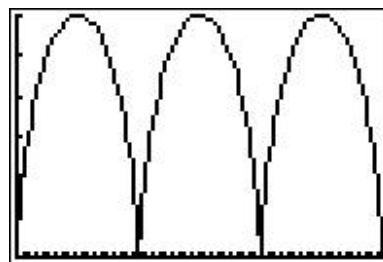
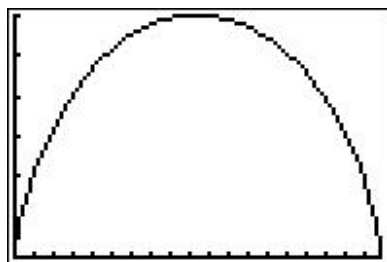
We first must ensure that the calculator is in 'Parametric Mode' and 'radian mode' when we enter the equations and advance to the 'Window' screen.



Our next step is to find appropriate bounds on the parameter,  $t$ , as well as for  $x$  and  $y$ . We know that one full revolution of the circle occurs over the interval  $0 \leq t < 2\pi$ , so it seems reasonable to keep these as our bounds on  $t$ . The 'Tstep' seems reasonably small – too large a value here can lead to incorrect graphs.<sup>12</sup> We know from our derivation of the equations of the cycloid that the center of the generating circle has coordinates  $(r\theta, r) = (3t, 3)$ . Since  $t$  ranges between 0 and  $2\pi$ , we set  $x$  to range between 0 and  $6\pi$ . The values of  $y$  go from the bottom of the circle to the top, so  $y$  ranges between 0 and 6.



Below we graph the cycloid with these settings, and then extend  $t$  to range from 0 to  $6\pi$  which forces  $x$  to range from 0 to  $18\pi$  yielding three arches of the cycloid.<sup>13</sup>



<sup>12</sup>Again, see page 44 in Section 1.2.

<sup>13</sup>It is instructive to note that keeping the  $y$  settings between 0 and 6 skews the aspect ratio of the cycloid. Using the 'Zoom Square' feature on the graphing calculator gives a true geometric perspective of the three arches.

In Exercises 21 - 24, plot the set of parametric equations with the help of a graphing utility. Be sure to indicate the orientation imparted on the curve by the parametrization.

$$21. \begin{cases} x = t^3 - 3t \\ y = t^2 - 4 \end{cases} \text{ for } -2 \leq t \leq 2$$

$$22. \begin{cases} x = 4 \cos^3(t) \\ y = 4 \sin^3(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$$

$$23. \begin{cases} x = e^t + e^{-t} \\ y = e^t - e^{-t} \end{cases} \text{ for } -2 \leq t \leq 2$$

$$24. \begin{cases} x = \cos(3t) \\ y = \sin(4t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$$

In Exercises 25 - 39, find a parametric description for the given oriented curve.

25. the directed line segment from  $(3, -5)$  to  $(-2, 2)$

26. the directed line segment from  $(-2, -1)$  to  $(3, -4)$

27. the curve  $y = 4 - x^2$  from  $(-2, 0)$  to  $(2, 0)$ .

28. the curve  $y = 4 - x^2$  from  $(-2, 0)$  to  $(2, 0)$   
(Shift the parameter so  $t = 0$  corresponds to  $(-2, 0)$ .)

29. the curve  $x = y^2 - 9$  from  $(-5, -2)$  to  $(0, 3)$ .

30. the curve  $x = y^2 - 9$  from  $(0, 3)$  to  $(-5, -2)$ .  
(Shift the parameter so  $t = 0$  corresponds to  $(0, 3)$ .)

31. the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ , oriented counter-clockwise

32. the circle  $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 4$ , oriented counter-clockwise

33. the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 6y = 0$ , oriented counter-clockwise

34. the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 6y = 0$ , oriented *clockwise*  
(Shift the parameter so  $t$  begins at 0.)

35. the circle  $(x - 3)^2 + (y + 1)^2 = 117$ , oriented counter-clockwise

36. the ellipse  $(x - 1)^2 + 9y^2 = 9$ , oriented counter-clockwise

37. the ellipse  $9x^2 + 4y^2 + 24y = 0$ , oriented counter-clockwise

38. the ellipse  $9x^2 + 4y^2 + 24y = 0$ , oriented *clockwise*  
(Shift the parameter so  $t = 0$  corresponds to  $(0, 0)$ .)

39. the triangle with vertices  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(3, 0)$ ,  $(0, 4)$ , oriented counter-clockwise  
(Shift the parameter so  $t = 0$  corresponds to  $(0, 0)$ .)

40. Use parametric equations and a graphing utility to graph the inverse of  $f(x) = x^3 + 3x - 4$ .

41. Every polar curve  $r = f(\theta)$  can be translated to a system of parametric equations with parameter  $\theta$  by  $\{x = r \cos(\theta) = f(\theta) \cos(\theta), y = r \sin(\theta) = f(\theta) \sin(\theta)\}$ . Convert  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  to a system of parametric equations. Check your answer by graphing  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  by hand using the techniques presented in Section 1.2 and then graphing the parametric equations you found using a graphing utility.
42. Use your results from Exercises ?? and ?? in Section ?? to find the parametric equations which model a passenger's position as they ride the [London Eye](#).

Suppose an object, called a projectile, is launched into the air. Ignoring everything except the force gravity, the path of the projectile is given by<sup>14</sup>

$$\begin{cases} x = v_0 \cos(\theta) t \\ y = -\frac{1}{2}gt^2 + v_0 \sin(\theta) t + s_0 \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq T$$

where  $v_0$  is the initial speed of the object,  $\theta$  is the angle from the horizontal at which the projectile is launched,<sup>15</sup>  $g$  is the acceleration due to gravity,  $s_0$  is the initial height of the projectile above the ground and  $T$  is the time when the object returns to the ground. (See the figure below.)



43. Carl's friend Jason competes in Highland Games Competitions across the country. In one event, the 'hammer throw', he throws a 56 pound weight for distance. If the weight is released 6 feet above the ground at an angle of  $42^\circ$  with respect to the horizontal with an initial speed of 33 feet per second, find the parametric equations for the flight of the hammer. (Here, use  $g = 32 \frac{\text{ft}}{\text{s}^2}$ .) When will the hammer hit the ground? How far away will it hit the ground? Check your answer using a graphing utility.
44. Eliminate the parameter in the equations for projectile motion to show that the path of the projectile follows the curve

$$y = -\frac{g \sec^2(\theta)}{2v_0^2} x^2 + \tan(\theta)x + s_0$$

<sup>14</sup>A nice mix of vectors and Calculus are needed to derive this.

<sup>15</sup>We've seen this before. It's the angle of elevation which was defined on page ??.

Use the vertex formula (Equation ??) to show the maximum height of the projectile is

$$y = \frac{v_0^2 \sin^2(\theta)}{2g} + s_0 \quad \text{when} \quad x = \frac{v_0^2 \sin(2\theta)}{2g}$$

45. In another event, the 'sheaf toss', Jason throws a 20 pound weight for height. If the weight is released 5 feet above the ground at an angle of  $85^\circ$  with respect to the horizontal and the sheaf reaches a maximum height of 31.5 feet, use your results from part 44 to determine how fast the sheaf was launched into the air. (Once again, use  $g = 32 \frac{\text{ft.}}{\text{s}^2}$ .)
46. Suppose  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ . (The projectile was launched vertically.) Simplify the general parametric formula given for  $y(t)$  above using  $g = 9.8 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}$  and compare that to the formula for  $s(t)$  given in Exercise ?? in Section ?. What is  $x(t)$  in this case?
47. If  $f$  and  $g$  are functions, explain why the function  $\vec{r}(t) = \langle f(t), g(t) \rangle$  is a function. The function  $\vec{r}$  is called a **vector-valued function** since it matches real number inputs,  $t$ , with vector outputs,  $\vec{r}(t)$ . Explain why when the vectors  $\vec{r}(t)$  are plotted in standard position, their terminal points trace out the curve described parametrically by the system of equations:  $\{x = f(t) \ y = g(t)\}$  (In Calculus, you will see systems of parametric equations 'packaged' together using vectors.)

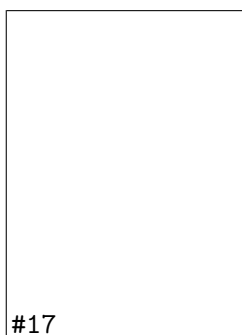
In Exercises 48 - 52, we explore the **hyperbolic cosine** function, denoted  $\cosh(t)$ , and the **hyperbolic sine** function, denoted  $\sinh(t)$ , defined below:

$$\cosh(t) = \frac{e^t + e^{-t}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sinh(t) = \frac{e^t - e^{-t}}{2}$$

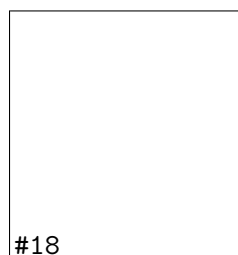
48. Using a graphing utility as needed, verify the following:
  - (a) the domain of  $\cosh(t)$  is  $(-\infty, \infty)$  and the range of  $\cosh(t)$  is  $[1, \infty)$ .
  - (b) the domain and range of  $\sinh(t)$  are both  $(-\infty, \infty)$ .
49. Show that  $\{x(t) = \cosh(t), y(t) = \sinh(t)\}$  parametrize the right half of the 'unit' hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = 1$ . (Hence the use of the adjective 'hyperbolic'.)
50. Compare and contrast the definitions of  $\cosh(t)$  and  $\sinh(t)$  to the formulas for  $\cos(t)$  and  $\sin(t)$  given in Exercise 84d in Section 1.3.
51. Four other hyperbolic functions are waiting to be defined: the hyperbolic secant  $\text{sech}(t)$ , the hyperbolic cosecant  $\text{csch}(t)$ , the hyperbolic tangent  $\tanh(t)$  and the hyperbolic cotangent  $\text{coth}(t)$ . Define these functions in terms of  $\cosh(t)$  and  $\sinh(t)$ , then convert them to formulas involving  $e^t$  and  $e^{-t}$ . Consult a suitable reference (a Calculus book, or this entry on the [hyperbolic functions](#)) and spend some time reliving the thrills of trigonometry with these 'hyperbolic' functions.
52. If these functions look familiar, they should. Enjoy some nostalgia and revisit Exercise ?? in Section ??, Exercise ?? in Section ?? and the answer to Exercise ?? in Section ??.

## 1.5.2 Answers

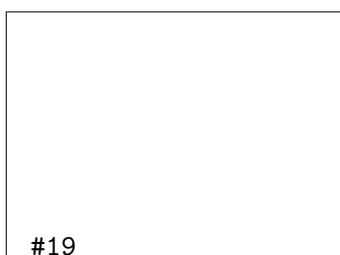
1.  $\begin{cases} x = 4t - 3 \\ y = 6t - 2 \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1$



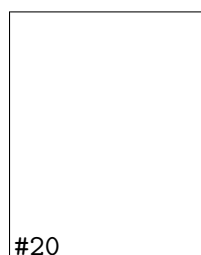
2.  $\begin{cases} x = 4t - 1 \\ y = 3 - 4t \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1$



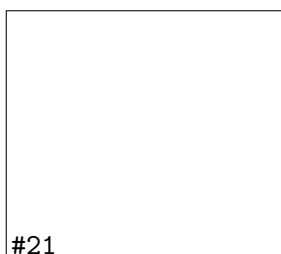
3.  $\begin{cases} x = 2t \\ y = t^2 \end{cases} \text{ for } -1 \leq t \leq 2$



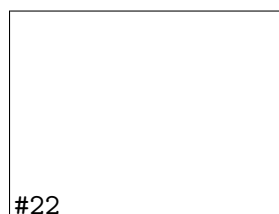
4.  $\begin{cases} x = t - 1 \\ y = 3 + 2t - t^2 \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 3$



5.  $\begin{cases} x = t^2 + 2t + 1 \\ y = t + 1 \end{cases} \text{ for } t \leq 1$



6.  $\begin{cases} x = \frac{1}{9}(18 - t^2) \\ y = \frac{1}{3}t \end{cases} \text{ for } t \geq -3$



7.  $\begin{cases} x = t \\ y = t^3 \end{cases} \text{ for } -\infty < t < \infty$

#23

8.  $\begin{cases} x = t^3 \\ y = t \end{cases} \text{ for } -\infty < t < \infty$

#24

9.  $\begin{cases} x = \cos(t) \\ y = \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } -\frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$

#25

10.  $\begin{cases} x = 3 \cos(t) \\ y = 3 \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq \pi$

#26

11.  $\begin{cases} x = -1 + 3 \cos(t) \\ y = 4 \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$

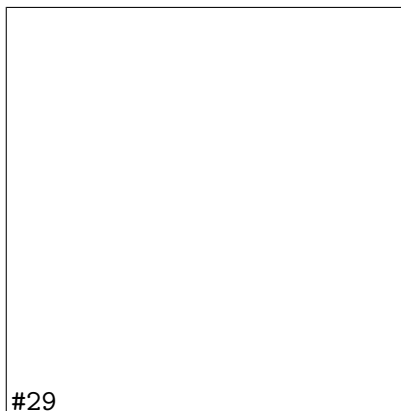
#27

12.  $\begin{cases} x = 3 \cos(t) \\ y = 2 \sin(t) + 1 \end{cases} \text{ for } \frac{\pi}{2} \leq t \leq 2\pi$

#28

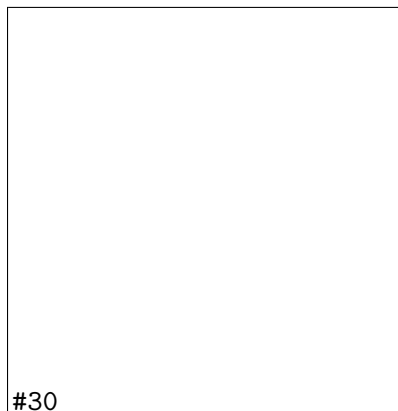


13.  $\begin{cases} x = 2 \cos(t) \\ y = \sec(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < \frac{\pi}{2}$



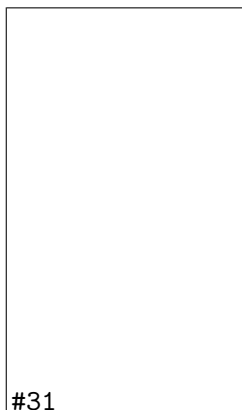
#29

14.  $\begin{cases} x = 2 \tan(t) \\ y = \cot(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 < t < \frac{\pi}{2}$



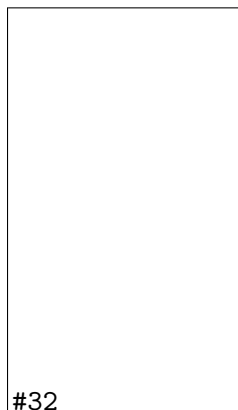
#30

15.  $\begin{cases} x = \sec(t) \\ y = \tan(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } -\frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{\pi}{2}$



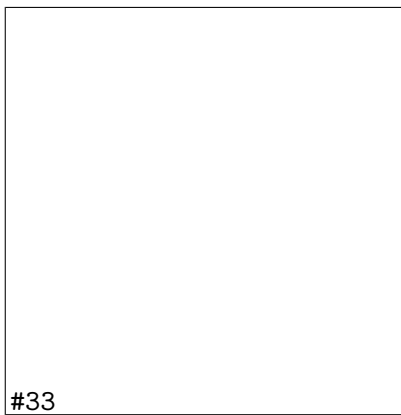
#31

16.  $\begin{cases} x = \sec(t) \\ y = \tan(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } \frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{3\pi}{2}$

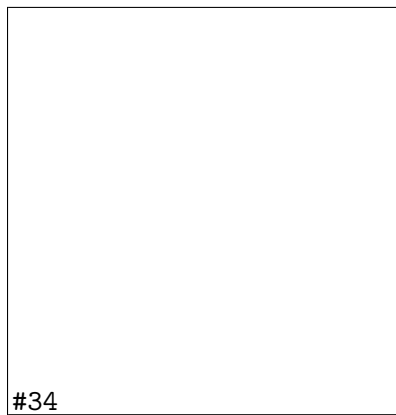


#32

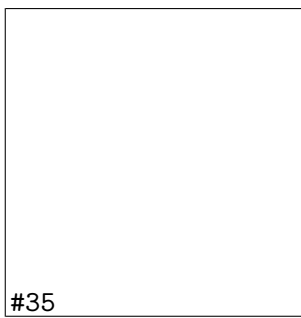
17.  $\begin{cases} x = \tan(t) \\ y = 2 \sec(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } -\frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{\pi}{2}$



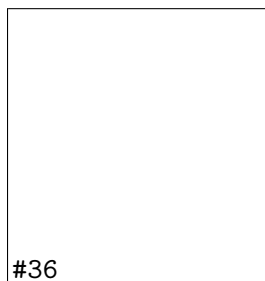
18.  $\begin{cases} x = \tan(t) \\ y = 2 \sec(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } \frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{3\pi}{2}$



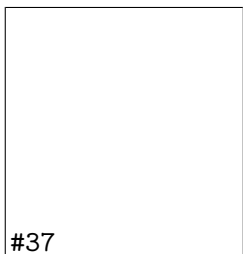
19.  $\begin{cases} x = \cos(t) \\ y = t \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 < t < \pi$



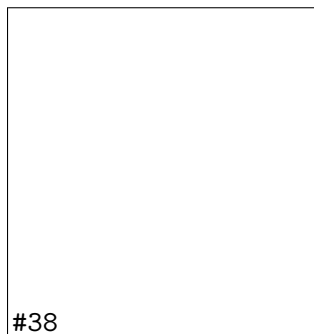
20.  $\begin{cases} x = \sin(t) \\ y = t \end{cases} \text{ for } -\frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{\pi}{2}$



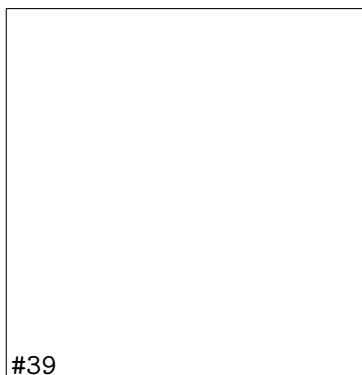
21.  $\begin{cases} x = t^3 - 3t \\ y = t^2 - 4 \end{cases} \text{ for } -2 \leq t \leq 2$



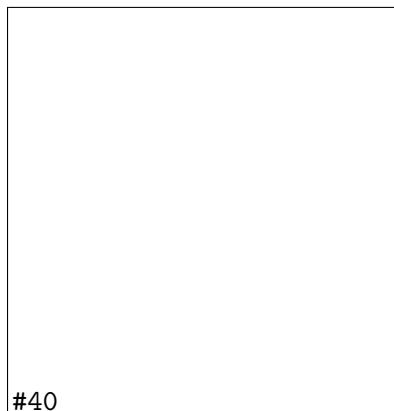
22.  $\begin{cases} x = 4 \cos^3(t) \\ y = 4 \sin^3(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$



23.  $\begin{cases} x = e^t + e^{-t} \\ y = e^t - e^{-t} \end{cases} \text{ for } -2 \leq t \leq 2$



24.  $\begin{cases} x = \cos(3t) \\ y = \sin(4t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$



25.  $\begin{cases} x = 3 - 5t \\ y = -5 + 7t \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1$

26.  $\begin{cases} x = 5t - 2 \\ y = -1 - 3t \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 1$

27.  $\begin{cases} x = t \\ y = 4 - t^2 \end{cases} \text{ for } -2 \leq t \leq 2$

28.  $\begin{cases} x = t - 2 \\ y = 4t - t^2 \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 4$

29.  $\begin{cases} x = t^2 - 9 \\ y = t \end{cases} \text{ for } -2 \leq t \leq 3$

30.  $\begin{cases} x = t^2 - 6t \\ y = 3 - t \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t \leq 5$

31.  $\begin{cases} x = 5 \cos(t) \\ y = 5 \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi$

32.  $\begin{cases} x = 1 + 2 \cos(t) \\ y = 2 \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi$

33.  $\begin{cases} x = 3 \cos(t) \\ y = 3 + 3 \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi$

34.  $\begin{cases} x = 3 \cos(t) \\ y = 3 - 3 \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi$

35.  $\begin{cases} x = 3 + \sqrt{117} \cos(t) \\ y = -1 + \sqrt{117} \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi$

36.  $\begin{cases} x = 1 + 3 \cos(t) \\ y = \sin(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi$

37.  $\begin{cases} x = 2 \cos(t) \\ y = 3 \sin(t) - 3 \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi$

38.  $\begin{cases} x = 2 \cos\left(t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 2 \sin(t) \\ y = -3 - 3 \sin\left(t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = -3 + 3 \cos(t) \end{cases} \text{ for } 0 \leq t < 2\pi$

39.  $\{x(t), y(t) \text{ where:}$

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 3t, & 0 \leq t \leq 1 \\ 6 - 3t, & 1 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 0, & 2 \leq t \leq 3 \end{cases} \quad y(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq t \leq 1 \\ 4t - 4, & 1 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 12 - 4t, & 2 \leq t \leq 3 \end{cases}$$

40. The parametric equations for the inverse are  $\begin{cases} x = t^3 + 3t - 4 \\ y = t \end{cases}$  for  $-\infty < t < \infty$

41.  $r = 6 \cos(2\theta)$  translates to  $\begin{cases} x = 6 \cos(2\theta) \cos(\theta) \\ y = 6 \cos(2\theta) \sin(\theta) \end{cases}$  for  $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$ .

42. The parametric equations which describe the locations of passengers on the London Eye are

$$\begin{cases} x = 67.5 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{15}t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 67.5 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{15}t\right) \\ y = 67.5 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{15}t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + 67.5 = 67.5 - 67.5 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{15}t\right) \end{cases} \text{ for } -\infty < t < \infty$$

43. The parametric equations for the hammer throw are  $\begin{cases} x = 33 \cos(42^\circ)t \\ y = -16t^2 + 33 \sin(42^\circ)t + 6 \end{cases}$  for  $t \geq 0$ .

To find when the hammer hits the ground, we solve  $y(t) = 0$  and get  $t \approx -0.23$  or  $1.61$ . Since  $t \geq 0$ , the hammer hits the ground after approximately  $t = 1.61$  seconds after it was launched into the air.

To find how far away the hammer hits the ground, we find  $x(1.61) \approx 39.48$  feet from where it was thrown into the air.

45. We solve  $y = \frac{v_0^2 \sin^2(\theta)}{2g} + s_0 = \frac{v_0^2 \sin^2(85^\circ)}{2(32)} + 5 = 31.5$  to get  $v_0 = \pm 41.34$ .

The initial speed of the sheaf was approximately 41.34 feet per second.